



DVG-5402G/GF

Wireless AC1200 Wave 2 MU-MIMO Dual Band Gigabit Router with Fiber WAN Port, 3G/LTE Support, 2 FXS Ports, and USB Port

Contents

Chapter 1. Introduction	. 6
Contents and Audience	6
Conventions	6
Document Structure	. 6
Chapter 2. Overview	. 7
General Information	7
Specifications	9
Product Appearance	. 17
Upper Panel	.17
Side Panel	.19
Back Panel	.21
Delivery Package	. 22
Chapter 3. Installation and Connection	23
Before You Begin	
Connecting to PC	
PC with Ethernet Adapter	.25
Obtaining IP Address Automatically (OS Windows 7)	
Obtaining IP Address Automatically (OS Windows 10)	
PC with Wi-Fi Adapter	.36
Obtaining IP Address Automatically and Connecting to Wireless Network	
(OS Windows 7)	.37
Obtaining IP Address Automatically and Connecting to Wireless Network	
(OS Windows 10)	
Connecting to Web-based Interface	
Web-based Interface Structure	
Summary Page	
Home Page	
Notifications	
Chapter 4. Configuring via Web-based Interface	
Initial Configuration Wizard	
Router	
Access Point or Repeater	
Creating 3G/LTE WAN Connection	
Changing LAN IPv4 Address	
Wi-Fi Client	
Configuring Wired WAN Connection	
Static IPv4 Connection	
Static IPv6 Connection	
PPPOE, IPv6 PPPOE, PPPOE Dual Stack,	
PPPoE + Dynamic IP (PPPoE Dual Access) Connections	. 64
PPPoE + Static IP (PPPoE Dual Access) Connection	
PPTP + Dynamic IP or L2TP + Dynamic IP Connection	
PPTP + Static IP or L2TP + Static IP Connection	. 67
Configuring Wireless Network	.68
Configuring LAN Ports for IPTV/VoIP	
Changing Web-based Interface Password	.72

Statistics	74
Network Statistics	74
DHCP	75
Routing	76
Clients and Sessions	
Port Statistics	
Multicast Groups	
IPsec Statistics	
VPN Statistics	
Connections Setup	
WAN	
Creating Dynamic IPv4 or Static IPv4 WAN Connection	
Creating Dynamic IPv6 or Static IPv6 WAN Connection	
Creating PPPoE WAN Connection	
Creating PPTP, L2TP, L2TP Dual Stack, or	
L2TP over IPsec WAN Connection	98
Creating PPPoE IPv6 or PPPoE Dual Stack WAN Connection	
Creating Mobile Internet WAN Connection	
Creating IPIP6 WAN Connection	
Creating 6in4 WAN Connection	
Creating 6to4 WAN Connection	
Creating 6rd WAN Connection	
LAN.	
IPv4	
IPv6	
WAN Failover	
Auto Configuration of 3G/LTE	
Traffic Balancing	
VPN	
IPsec	143
GRE	152
IPIP	154
PPTP/L2TP Servers	156
VPN Users	161
EoGRE	162
EoIP	164
Wi-Fi	167
Basic Settings	167
Client Management	178
WPS	179
Using WPS Function via Web-based Interface	181
Using WPS Function without Web-based Interface	
WMM	
Client	
Client Shaping	
Additional	
MAC Filter	196
Print Server	

USB Storage	. 200
Information	
USB Users	
Samba	
FTP	
Filebrowser	
DLNA	
Torrent Client	.211
XUPNPD	.215
USB Modem	.216
Basic Settings	.217
SMS	.220
USSD	.222
Advanced	. 223
VLAN	.224
WAN Remapping	.227
DNS	.228
DDNS	
Ports Settings	
Redirect	
Routing	
TR-069 Client	
Port Mirroring	
UPnP	
UDPXY	
IGMP	
ALG/Passthrough	
CoovaChilli	
VoIP	
Home	
Advanced Settings	
Rings	
Security	
Alarm Clock	
Profile Settings	
Basic Settings	
Call on Event	
Additional Settings	
Fax Settings	
Audio Settings	
Call Routing	
Call Logging	
Firewall	
IP Filter	
Virtual Servers	
DMZ	
MAC Filter	
URL Filter	
AdBlock	
Remote Access	

System	313
Configuration	
Creating Configuration Backup	
Buttons Configuration	
5	
Firmware Update	
Local Update	
Remote Update	
Schedule	
Log	
Ping	
Traceroute	
Telnet/SSH	
System Time	
Auto Provision	
SkyDNS	
- Settings	
Devices and Rules	
Chapter 5. Operation Guidelines	
Safety Rules and Conditions	
Wireless Installation Considerations	
Chapter 6. Abbreviations and Acronyms	
onapter of inductions and Actonyms	

CHAPTER 1. INTRODUCTION

Contents and Audience

This manual describes the router DVG-5402G/GF and explains how to configure and operate it.

This manual is intended for users familiar with basic networking concepts, who create an in-home local area network, and system administrators, who install and configure networks in offices.

Conventions

Example	Description	
text	The body text of the manual.	
Before You Begin	A reference to a chapter or section of this manual.	
"Quick Installation Guide"	A reference to a document.	
Change	A name of a menu, menu item, control (field, checkbox, drop-down list, button, etc.).	
192.168.8.254	Data that you should enter in the specified field.	
Information	An important note.	

Document Structure

Chapter 1 describes the purpose and structure of the document.

Chapter 2 gives an overview of the router's hardware and software features, describes its appearance and the package contents.

Chapter 3 explains how to install the router DVG-5402G/GF and configure a PC in order to access its web-based interface.

Chapter 4 describes all pages of the web-based interface in detail.

Chapter 5 includes safety instructions and tips for networking.

Chapter 6 introduces abbreviations and acronyms most commonly used in User Manuals for D-Link customer premises equipment.

CHAPTER 2. OVERVIEW

General Information

The DVG-5402G/GF device is a wireless dual band gigabit VoIP router with 3G/LTE support, a fiber WAN port, two FXS ports, USB port, and built-in 4-port switch.

The device is equipped with two FXS ports which allow connection of analog phones for calls via Internet.

The router is equipped with a USB port for connecting a USB modem¹, which can be used to establish connection to the Internet. In addition, to the USB port of the router you can connect a USB storage device, which will be used as a network drive, or a printer.

In order to use the multifunction USB port effectively, the router supports simultaneous operation of several USB devices. For example, you can access multimedia content of the connected HDD storage and at the same time share a USB printer.²

Any Ethernet port of the device can be configured to connect to a private Ethernet line.

Using the DVG-5402G/GF device, you are able to quickly create a high-speed wireless network at home or in your office, which lets computers and mobile devices access the Internet virtually anywhere (within the operational range of your wireless network). Simultaneous activity of 2.4GHz band and 5GHz band allows performing a wide range of tasks. The router can operate as a base station for connecting wireless devices of the standards 802.11a, 802.11b, 802.11g, 802.11n, and 802.11ac (at the wireless connection rate up to 1167Mbps³).

The router supports multiple functions for the wireless interface: several security standards (WEP, WPA/WPA2/WPA3), MAC address filtering, WPS, WMM.

In addition, the device is equipped with a button for switching the Wi-Fi network off/on. If needed, for example, when you leave home, you can easily switch the router's WLAN by pressing the button, and devices connected to the LAN ports of the router will stay online.

Multi-user MIMO technology allows to distribute the router's resources to let multiple wireless clients use the Wi-Fi network efficiently, keeping high rates for HD media streaming, lag-free gaming, and fast transfer of large files.

Transmit Beamforming technology allows to flexibly change the antennas' radiation pattern and to redistribute the signal directly to wireless devices connected to the router.

Support of guest Wi-Fi network allows you to create a separate wireless network with individual security settings and maximum rate limitation. Devices connected to the guest network will be able to access the Internet, but will be isolated from the devices and resources of the router's LAN.

¹ Not included in the delivery package. D-Link does not guarantee compatibility with all USB modems. For the list of supported USB modems, see the *Specifications* section, page 9.

² When using a USB hub with external power supply.

³ Up to 300Mbps for 2.4GHz and up to 867Mbps for 5GHz.

The wireless router DVG-5402G/GF includes a built-in firewall. The advanced security functions minimize threats of hacker attacks, prevent unwanted intrusions to your network, and block access to unwanted websites for users of your LAN.

The SSH protocol support provides more secure remote configuration and management of the router due to encryption of all transmitted traffic, including passwords.

In addition, the router supports IPsec and allows to create secure VPN tunnels. Support of the IKEv2 protocol allows to provide simplified message exchange and use asymmetric authentication engine upon configuration of an IPsec tunnel.

The router also supports the SkyDNS web content filtering service, which provides more settings and opportunities for safer Internet experience for home users of all ages and for professional activities of corporate users.

Now the schedules are also implemented; they can be applied to the rules and settings of the firewall and used to reboot the router at the specified time or every specified time period, to automatically save the configuration of the router to a connected USB storage, to set rules for limitation of wireless client maximum bandwidth, and to enable/disable the wireless network and the Wi-Fi filter.

The new ad blocking function effectively blocks advertisements which appear during web surfing.

You can configure the settings of the wireless router DVG-5402G/GF via the user-friendly webbased interface (the interface is available in several languages).

The configuration wizard allows you to quickly switch DVG-5402G/GF to one of the following modes: router (for connection to a wired or wireless ISP), access point, repeater, or client, and then configure all needed setting for operation in the selected mode in several simple steps.

Also DVG-5402G/GF supports configuration and management via mobile application for Android and iPhone smartphones.

You can simply update the firmware: the router itself finds approved firmware on D-Link update server and notifies when ready to install it.

Specifications^{*}

Hardware		
Processor	· RTL9607C (900MHz)	
RAM	256MB, DDR3, built in processor	
Flash	· 128MB, SPI NAND	
Interfaces	 1000BASE-X SFP WAN port 4 10/100/1000BASE-T LAN ports 2 RJ-11 FXS ports USB 2.0 port 	
LEDs	 Power SFP Internet LAN 1-4 WLAN 2.4G/5G WPS USB FXS 1-2 	
Buttons	 ON/OFF button to power on/power off RESET button to restore factory default settings WLAN button to enable/disable wireless network WPS button to set up wireless connection 	
Antenna	Four external non-detachable antennas (5dBi gain)	
МІМО	· 2 x 2, MU-MIMO	
Power connector	Power input connector (DC)	

Software	
WAN connection types	 Mobile Internet (via supported USB modem) PPPoE IPv6 PPPoE PPPoE Dual Stack Static IPv4 / Dynamic IPv4 Static IPv6 / Dynamic IPv6 PPPoE + Static IP (PPPoE Dual Access) PPPoE + Dynamic IP (PPPoE Dual Access) PPTP/L2TP + Static IP PPTP/L2TP + Static IP L2TP Dual Stack IPIP6 in DSLite mode 6in4 6to4 6rd

^{*} The device features are subject to change without notice. For the latest versions of the firmware and relevant documentation, visit <u>www.dlink.ru</u>.

Software	
Network functions	 DHCP server/relay Advanced configuration of built-in DHCP server Stateful/Stateless mode for IPv6 address assignment, IPv6 prefix delegation Automatic obtainment of LAN IP address (for access point/repeater/client modes) DNS relay Dynamic DNS Static IPv4/IPv6 routing IGMP Proxy RIP Support of UPnP Support of VLAN WAN ping respond Support of SIP ALG Support of RTSP WAN failover LAN/WAN conversion Autonegotiation of speed, duplex mode, and flow control / Manual speed and duplex mode setup for each Ethernet port Built-in UDPXY application XUPNPD plug-in Equal load distribution while using several WAN connections (traffic balancing) Port mirroring
Firewall functions	 Port fillioning Network Address Translation (NAT) Stateful Packet Inspection (SPI) IPv4/IPv6 filter MAC filter URL filter Ad blocking function DMZ Virtual servers Built-in SkyDNS web content filtering service
VPN	IPsec/PPTP/L2TP/PPOE pass-through PPTP/L2TP servers PPTP/L2TP tunnels L2TP over IPsec client GRE/EoGRE/EoIP/IPIP tunnels IPsec tunnels Transport/Tunnel mode IKEv1/IKEv2 support DES encryption NAT Traversal Support of DPD (Keep-alive for VPN tunnels)
USB interface functions	 USB modem USB modem Auto connection to available type of supported network (4G/3G/2G) Auto configuration of connection upon plugging in USB modem Enabling/disabling PIN code check, changing PIN code⁴ Sending/receiving/reading/removing SMS messages⁴ Support of USSD requests⁴ USB storage File browser Print server Access to storage via accounts Built-in Samba/FTP/DLNA server Built-in Transmission torrent client; uploading/downloading files from/to USE storage

⁴ For some models of USB modems.

	Overview

Software	
Management and monitoring	 Local and remote access to settings through SSH/TELNET/WEB (HTTP/HTTPS) Multilingual web-based interface for configuration and management Support of D-Link Assistant application for Android and iPhone smartphones Notification on connection problems and auto redirect to settings Firmware update via web-based interface Automatic notification on new firmware version Saving/restoring configuration to/from file Support of logging to remote host/connected USB storage Automatic synchronization of system time with NTP server and manual time/date setup Ping utility Traceroute utility TR-069 client Schedules for rules and settings of firewall, automatic reboot and saving a configuration backup to a connected USB storage, limitation of wireless client maximum bandwidth, and enabling/disabling wireless network and Wi-Fi filter Automatic upload of configuration file from ISP's server (Auto Provision) Configuration of action for hardware buttons

Wireless Module Parameters	
Standards Frequency range	 IEEE 802.11ac Wave 2 IEEE 802.11a/b/g/n IEEE 802.11w 2400 ~ 2483.5MHz
The frequency range depends upon the radio frequency regulations applied in your country	 5150 ~ 5350MHz 5650 ~ 5850MHz
Wireless connection security	 WEP WPA/WPA2 (Personal/Enterprise) WPA3 (Personal) MAC filter WPS (PBC/PIN)
Advanced functions	 Support of client mode WMM (Wi-Fi QoS) Information on connected Wi-Fi clients Advanced settings Guest Wi-Fi / support of MBSSID Rate limitation for wireless network/separate MAC addresses Periodic scan of channels, automatic switch to least loaded channel Support of 2.4GHz/5GHz TX Beamforming Autonegotiation of channel bandwidth in accordance with environment conditions (20/40 Coexistence) Support of STBC CoovaChilli authentication portal
Wireless connection rate	 IEEE 802.11a: 6, 9, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48, and 54Mbps IEEE 802.11b: 1, 2, 5.5, and 11Mbps IEEE 802.11g: 6, 9, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48, and 54Mbps IEEE 802.11n (2.4GHz/5GHz): from 6.5 to 300Mbps (from MCS0 to MCS15) IEEE 802.11ac (5GHz): from 6.5 to 867Mbps (from MCS0 to MCS9)

Wireless Module Parameters		
Transmitter output power	 802.11a (typical at room temperature 25 °C) 15dBm at 6, 9, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48, 54Mbps 	
The maximum value of the transmitter output power depends upon the radio frequency regulations applied in your	 802.11b (typical at room temperature 25 °C) 15dBm at 1, 2, 5.5, 11Mbps 	
country	 802.11g (typical at room temperature 25 °C) 15dBm at 6, 9, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48, 54Mbps 	
	 802.11n (typical at room temperature 25 °C) 2.4GHz, HT20/HT40 15dBm at MCS0/8~7/15 5GHz, HT20/HT40 15dBm at MCS0/8~7/15 	
	 802.11ac (typical at room temperature 25 °C) VHT20/VHT40/VHT80 15dBm at MCS0~9 	
Receiver sensitivity	 802.11a (typical at PER < 10% at room temperature 25 °C) -82dBm at 6Mbps -81dBm at 9Mbps -79dBm at 12Mbps -77dBm at 18Mbps -74dBm at 24Mbps -70dBm at 36Mbps -66dBm at 48Mbps -65dBm at 54Mbps 	
	 802.11b (typical at PER = 8% at room temperature 25 °C) -82dBm at 1Mbps -80dBm at 2Mbps -78dBm at 5.5Mbps -76dBm at 11Mbps 	
	 802.11g (typical at PER < 10% at room temperature 25 °C) -82dBm at 6Mbps -81dBm at 9Mbps -79dBm at 12Mbps -77dBm at 18Mbps -74dBm at 24Mbps -70dBm at 36Mbps -66dBm at 48Mbps -65dBm at 54Mbps 	

Wireless Module Parameters			
	· 802.11n (typical at PE	ER = 10% at room temperature 2	25 °C)
	2.4GHz/5GHz, HT20		5GHz, HT40
	-82dBm at MCS0/8	-79dBm	at MCS0/8
	-79dBm at MCS1/9	-76dBm	at MCS1/9
	-77dBm at MCS2/10	-74dBm	at MCS2/10
	-74dBm at MCS3/11	-71dBm	at MCS3/11
	-70dBm at MCS4/12	-67dBm	at MCS4/12
	-66dBm at MCS5/13	-63dBm	at MCS5/13
	-65dBm at MCS6/14	-62dBm	at MCS6/14
	-64dBm at MCS7/15	-61dBm	at MCS7/15
	· 802.11ac (typical at P VHT20	PER = 10% at room temperature VHT40	25 °C) VHT80
	-82dBm at MCS0	-79dBm at MCS0	-76dBm at MCS0
	-79dBm at MCS1	-76dBm at MCS1	-73dBm at MCS1
	-77dBm at MCS2	-74dBm at MCS2	-71dBm at MCS2
	-74dBm at MCS3	-71dBm at MCS3	-68dBm at MCS3
	-70dBm at MCS4	-67dBm at MCS4	-64dBm at MCS4
	-66dBm at MCS5	-63dBm at MCS5	-60dBm at MCS5
	-65dBm at MCS6	-62dBm at MCS6	-59dBm at MCS6
	-64dBm at MCS7	-61dBm at MCS7	-58dBm at MCS7
	-56dBm at MCS8	-56dBm at MCS8	-53dBm at MCS8
		-54dBm at MCS9	-51dBm at MCS9
Modulation schemes	· 802.11a: BPSK, QPS	K, 16QAM, 64QAM with OFDM	
	 802.11b: DQPSK, DB 	PSK, DSSS, CCK	
	· 802.11g: BPSK, QPS	K, 16QAM, 64QAM with OFDM	
	· 802.11n: BPSK, QPS	K, 16QAM, 64QAM with OFDM	
	· 802.11ac: BPSK, QPS	SK, 16QAM, 64QAM, up to 2560	QAM with OFDM

 Support of several SIP profiles Individual account per port Invite with Challenge Register by IP address or domain name of SIP server Backup proxy support Support of DHCP option 120 RFC3986 SIP URI format support Outbound proxy support STUN client NAT public IP address NAT keep-alive Session timer (re-invite/update) Call types: voice/modem/fax User programmable Dial Plan Manual peer table (for P2P calls) Handling numbers in E.164 format

Phone	
Call Features	 Direct IP-to-IP call without SIP proxy (P2P) Call hold/retrieve Call awaiting Forwarding (unconditional, busy, no answer) Do Not Disturb Anonymous call blocking Speed/abbreviated dialing PIN code before dialing
	 Hotline Vertical service codes CLIR Intercom (internal calls without SIP server) Filtering SIP packets by IP address/domain name (white/black list) Alarm clock Logging calls Sending text messages to VoIP gateways/IP phones
Voice Features	 Codecs: G.711 a/µ-law, G.729A, G.726, G.722, G.723.1 DTMF detection and generation In-band DTMF, out-of-band DTMF (RFC2833, SIP-INFO) Comfort Noise Generation (CNG) Voice Activity Detection (VAD) Dynamic Jitter Buffer Echo Cancellation (LEC/NLP) Call progress tone generation (FXS) DTMF/PULSE dial support Caller ID detection and generation T.30 FAX bypass to G.711, T.38 Real Time FAX Relay, V.152 Adjustable Flash Time Advanced call transfer, three-party calls Volume control (speaker/microphone)

Physical Parameters	
Dimensions (L x W x H)	· 206 x 123 x 32 mm (8.1 x 4.8 x 1.3 in)
Weight	· 330 g (0.73 lb)

Operating Environment	
Power	Output: 12V DC, 1.5A
Temperature	 Operating: from 0 to 40 °C Storage: from -20 to 65 °C
Humidity	 Operating: from 10% to 90% (non-condensing) Storage: from 5% to 95% (non-condensing)

Overview

Supported USB modems⁵	
GSM	· Alcatel X500
	D-Link DWM-152C1
	D-Link DWM-156A6
	D-Link DWM-156A7
	D-Link DWM 156A8
	D-Link DWM-156C1
	D-Link DWM-157B1
	D-Link DWM-157B1 (Velcom)
	D-Link DWM-158D1
	D-Link DWR-710
	Huawei E150
	Huawei E1550
	Huawei E156G
	Huawei E160G
	· Huawei E169G
	· Huawei E171
	 Huawei E173 (Megafon)
	· Huawei E220
	 Huawei E3131 (MTS 420S)
	Huawei E352 (Megafon)
	· Huawei E3531
	Prolink PHS600
	Prolink PHS901
	· ZTE MF112
	· ZTE MF192
	· ZTE MF626
	· ZTE MF627
	· ZTE MF652
	· ZTE MF667
	· ZTE MF668
	· ZTE MF752

⁵ The manufacturer does not guarantee proper operation of the router with every modification of the firmware of USB modems.

Supported USB modems

••	
LTE	· Alcatel IK40V
	· D-Link DWM-222
	· Huawei E3131
	· Huawei E3272
	· Huawei E3351
	· Huawei E3372s
	· Huawei E3372h-153
	· Huawei E3372h-320
	· Huawei E367
	· Huawei E392
	· Megafon M100-1
	· Megafon M100-2
	· Megafon M100-3
	· Megafon M100-4
	· Megafon M150-1
	· Megafon M150-2
	· Megafon M150-3
	· Quanta 1K6E (Beeline 1K6E)
	· MTS 824F
	• MTS 827F
	· Yota LU-150
	· Yota WLTUBA-107
	· ZTE MF823
	· ZTE MF823D
	· ZTE MF827
	· ZTE MF833T
	· ZTE MF833V
Smartphones in USB tethering mode	 Some models of Android smartphones

Product Appearance

Upper Panel



Figure 1. Upper panel view.

LED	Mode	Description
	Solid green	The router is powered on.
Power	Blinking green	The firmware is being updated.
	No light	The router is powered off.
	Solid green	The cable is connected to the port.
SFP	Blinking green	Data transfer through the SFP port.
	No light	The cable is not connected.

LED	Mode	Description
	Solid green	The default WAN connection is on.
Internet	No light	 The default WAN connection is off, or there are no WAN connections created, or the device is configured as an access point or
		repeater.
LAN 1-4	Solid green	A device is connected to the port of the router (for the LAN port configured as the WAN port: the router is connected to an Ethernet line).
	Blinking green	Data transfer through the relevant LAN port.
	No light	The cable is not connected to the relevant port.
	Solid green	The router's WLAN of the relevant band is on.
WLAN 2.4G WLAN 5G	Blinking green	Data transfer through the Wi-Fi network of the relevant band.
	No light	The router's WLAN of the relevant band is off.
WPS	Blinking green	Attempting to add a wireless device via the WPS function.
	No light	The WPS function is not in use.
USB	Solid green	A USB device is connected to the router's USB port.
038	No light	No USB device.
	Solid green	The line is registered on the SIP server.
	Slow blinking green	Attempting to register on the SIP server.
FXS 1-2	Fast blinking green	The receiver is off-hook, an incoming call, or talking.
	No light	The line is not registered on the SIP server, because registration is disabled or the corresponding connection is off.

In case the **Power**, **Internet**, **WPS**, **USB**, and **FXS 1-2** LEDs are blinking green at the same time, the device is in the emergency mode. Power the device off and on. If the device is loaded in the emergency mode again, restore the factory default settings via the hardware **RESET** button.

Side Panel



Figure 2. Side panel view.

Name	Description
RESET	A button to restore the factory defaults. To restore the factory defaults, press the button (with the device turned on), hold it for 10 seconds, and then release the button.
WLAN	A button to enable/disable wireless network. To disable the router's wireless network: with the device turned on, press the button and release. The WLAN 2.4G and WLAN 5G LEDs should turn off.

Descriptio	Name

	A button to set up a wireless connection (the WPS function).
WPS	To use the WPS function: with the device turned on, press the button, hold it for 2 seconds, and release. The WPS LED should start blinking.



Figure 3. Back panel view.

Port	Description			
SFP	An optical port to connect to a fiber optic line.			
PHONE 1-2	Ports to connect analog phones.			
LAN 1-4	4 Ethernet ports to connect computers or network devices.			
USB	A port for connecting a USB device (modem, storage, printer).			
POWER	Power connector.			
ON/OFF	A button to turn the router on/off.			

The device is also equipped with four external non-detachable Wi-Fi antennas.

Delivery Package

The following should be included:

- Router DVG-5402G/GF
- Power adapter DC 12V/1.5A
- Ethernet cable
- RJ-11 telephone cable
- "Quick Installation Guide" (brochure).

The "*User Manual*" and "*Quick Installation Guide*" documents are available on D-Link website (see <u>www.dlink.ru</u>).



Using a power supply with a different voltage rating than the one included will cause damage and void the warranty for this product.

CHAPTER 3. INSTALLATION AND CONNECTION

Before You Begin

Please, read this manual prior to installing the device. Make sure that you have all the necessary information and equipment.

Computer or Mobile Device

Configuration of the wireless dual band gigabit VoIP router with 3G/LTE support DVG-5402G/GF (hereinafter referred to as "the router") is performed via the built-in web-based interface. The web-based interface is available from any operating system that supports a web browser.

Also you can use D-Link Assistant application for Android or iPhone mobile devices (smartphones or tablets).

PC Web Browser

The following web browsers are recommended:

- Apple Safari 8 and later
- Google Chrome 48 and later
- Microsoft Internet Explorer 10 and later
- Microsoft Edge 20.10240 and later
- Mozilla Firefox 44 and later
- Opera 35 and later.

For successful operation, JavaScript should be enabled on the web browser. Make sure that JavaScript has not been disabled by other software (such as virus protection or web user security packages) running on your computer.

Wired or Wireless NIC (Ethernet or Wi-Fi Adapter)

Any computer that uses the router should be equipped with an Ethernet or Wi-Fi adapter (NIC). If your computer is not equipped with such a device, install an Ethernet or Wi-Fi adapter prior to using the router.

Wireless Connection

Wireless workstations from your network should be equipped with a wireless 802.11a, b, g, n, or ac NIC (Wi-Fi adapter). In addition, you should specify the values of SSID, channel number and security settings defined in the web-based interface of the router for all these wireless workstations.

SFP Transceiver

To connect to a fiber optic line, you need to use an SFP transceiver recommended by your ISP.

VoIP

On order to use VoIP over SIP, you need to connect an analog phone to an FXS port of the router. Then access the web-based interface of the router, and you will be able to configure all needed settings.

USB Modem

To connect to an LTE or 3G network, you should use a USB modem. Connect it to the USB port of the router, then access the web-based interface of the router, and you will be able to configure a connection to the Internet⁶.

Your USB modem should be equipped with an active SIM card of your operator.

Some operators require subscribers to activate their USB modems prior to using them. Please, refer to connection guidelines provided by your operator when concluding the agreement or placed on its website.

For some models of USB modems, it is required to disable the PIN code check on the SIM card prior to connecting the USB modem to the router.

⁶ Contact your operator to get information on the service coverage and fees.

Connecting to PC

PC with Ethernet Adapter

- 1. Connect an Ethernet cable between any of LAN ports located on the back panel of the router and the Ethernet port of your PC.
- 2. *To connect the device to a fiber optic line*: connect your SFP transceiver to the SFP port, then connect the fiber optic cable to the SFP transceiver.
- 3. *To connect via USB modem*: connect your USB modem to the USB port⁷ located on the back panel of the router.

In some cases you will need to reboot the router after connection of the USB modem.

- 4. *To connect the device to an Ethernet line*: please connect the router to the ISP's Ethernet line only after setting the WAN port (see the *WAN Remapping* section, page 227) and creating an Internet connection (see the *WAN* section, page 83).
- 5. Connect a phone cable between an FXS port of the router and the phone.
- 6. Connect the power cord to the power connector port on the back panel of the router, then plug the power adapter into an electrical outlet or power strip.
- 7. Turn on the router by pressing the **ON/OFF** button on its back panel.

Then make sure that your PC is configured to obtain an IP address automatically (as DHCP client).

⁷ It is recommended to use a USB extension cable to connect a USB modem to the router.

Obtaining IP Address Automatically (OS Windows 7)

- 1. Click the **Start** button and proceed to the **Control Panel** window.
- 2. Select the **Network and Sharing Center** section. (If the Control Panel has the category view (the **Category** value is selected from the **View by** drop-down list in the top right corner of the window), choose the **View network status and tasks** line under the **Network and Internet** section.)

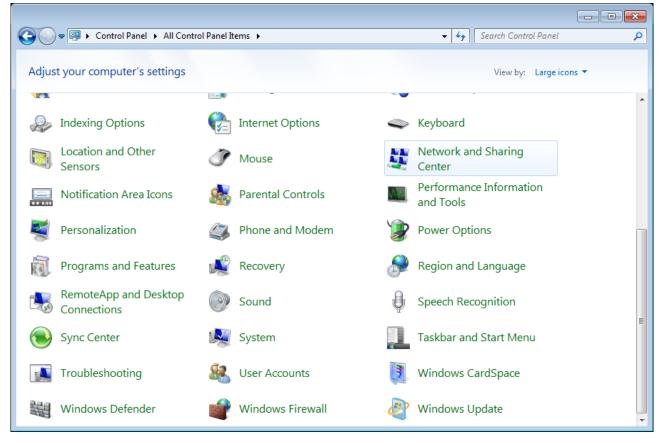


Figure 4. The Control Panel window.

3. In the menu located on the left part of the window, select the **Change adapter settings** line.

💽 🗢 👯 🕨 Control Panel 🕨	Network and Internet 🕨 Network and Sharing Center 🚽 🍫 Search Control Panel				
Control Panel Home	View your basic network information and set up connections				
Manage wireless networks Change adapter settings	See full n				
Change advanced sharing settings	C1 Internet (This computer)				
-	View your active networks Connect to a netw You are currently not connected to any networks.				
	Change your networking settings				
	Set up a new connection or network Set up a wireless, broadband, dial-up, ad hoc, or VPN connection; or set up a router or acce point.				
	Connect to a network Connect or reconnect to a wireless, wired, dial-up, or VPN network connection.				
	Choose homegroup and sharing options				
	Access files and printers located on other network computers, or change sharing settings.				
See also	Troubleshoot problems				
HomeGroup	Diagnose and repair network problems, or get troubleshooting information.				
Internet Options					
Windows Firewall					

Figure 5. The Network and Sharing Center window.

4. In the opened window, right-click the relevant **Local Area Connection** icon and select the **Properties** line in the menu displayed.

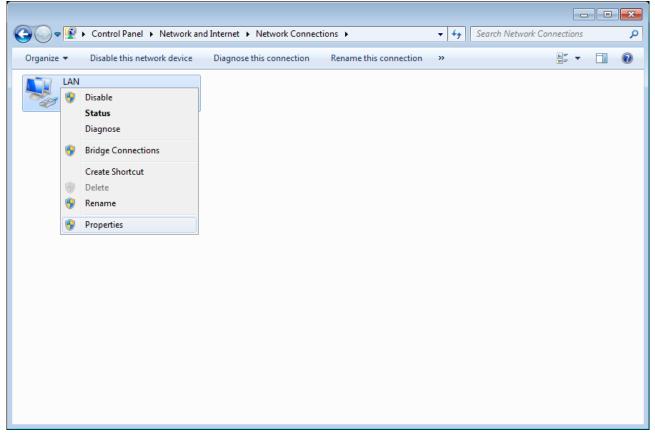


Figure 6. The Network Connections window.

5. In the Local Area Connection Properties window, on the Networking tab, select the Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4) line. Click the Properties button.

🖳 LAN Properties				
Networking				
Connect using:				
₽.				
<u>C</u> onfigure				
This connection uses the following items:				
Internet Protocol Version 6 (TCP/IPv6) Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4) Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4) Ink-Layer Topology Discovery Mapper I/0 Driver Install				
Description Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol. The default wide area network protocol that provides communication across diverse interconnected networks.				
OK Cancel				

Figure 7. The Local Area Connection Properties window.

6. Make sure that the **Obtain an IP address automatically** and **Obtain DNS server** address automatically choices of the radio buttons are selected. Click the **OK** button.

Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4)) Properties				
General Alternate Configuration					
You can get IP settings assigned automatically if your network supports this capability. Otherwise, you need to ask your network administrator for the appropriate IP settings.					
) Obtain an IP address automatical	ally				
OUse the following IP address:	II				
IP address:	· · · · · · · · · · ·				
S <u>u</u> bnet mask:					
Default gateway:	1				
Obtain DNS server address autor	matically				
OUSe the following DNS server add	dresses:				
Preferred DNS server:	· · · · · · · ·				
Alternate DNS server:					
Vaļidate settings upon exit	Ad <u>v</u> anced				
	OK Cancel				

Figure 8. The Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4) Properties window.

7. Click the **OK** button in the connection properties window.

Obtaining IP Address Automatically (OS Windows 10)

- 1. Click the **Start** button and proceed to the **Settings** window.
- 2. Select the Network & Internet section.

Settings				_		×
	Windows Settings					
	Find a setting		Q			
旦	System Display, sound, notifications, power		Devices Bluetooth, printers, mouse			
	Phone Link your Android, iPhone		Network & Internet Wi-Fi, airplane mode, VPN			
⊈	Personalization Background, lock screen, colors		Apps Uninstall, defaults, optional features			
8	Accounts Your accounts, email, sync, work, family	色 A字	Time & Language Speech, region, date			

Figure 9. The Windows Settings window.

3. In the **Change your network settings** section, select the **Change adapter options** line.

You're connected to the Internet If you have a limited data plan, you can make this network a metered connection or change other properties.				
es				
settings				
is d change connection settings.				
ect to, decide what you want to share.				
problems.				
25				

Figure 10. The Network & Internet window.

4. In the opened window, right-click the relevant **Local Area Connection** icon and select the **Properties** line in the menu displayed.

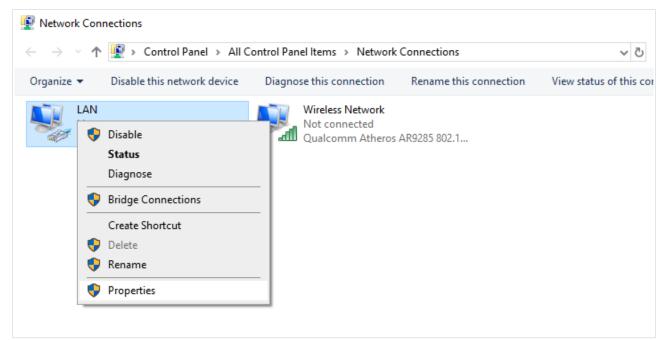


Figure 11. The Network Connections window.

5. In the Local Area Connection Properties window, on the Networking tab, select the Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4) line. Click the Properties button.

Networking Sharing					
Connect using:					
🚍 Realtek PCIe FE Family Controller					
<u>C</u> onfigure					
This connection uses the following items:					
Client for Microsoft Networks File and Printer Sharing for Microsoft Networks QoS Packet Scheduler Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4) Microsoft Network Adapter Multiplexor Protocol Microsoft LLDP Protocol Driver Internet Protocol Version 6 (TCP/IPv6)					
Install Uninstall Properties					
Description Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol. The default wide area network protocol that provides communication across diverse interconnected networks. OK Cancel					

Figure 12. The local area connection properties window.

6. Make sure that the **Obtain an IP address automatically** and **Obtain DNS server** address automatically choices of the radio buttons are selected. Click the **OK** button.

Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4) Properties				×			
General	Alternate Configuration						
You can get IP settings assigned automatically if your network supports this capability. Otherwise, you need to ask your network administrator for the appropriate IP settings.							
() ()	otain an IP address automatica	ally					
-OUs	e the following IP address: —						
IP ad	ldress:						
Subr	iet mask:						
Defa	ult gateway:						
() OI	otain DNS server address auto	matically	,				
OUs	e the following DNS server ad	dresses:					- 11
Prefe	erred DNS server:						
Alter	nate DNS server:						
v	alidate settings upon exit				Adva	nced	
		[OK		Cancel	

Figure 13. The Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4) Properties window.

7. Click the **Close** button in the connection properties window.

PC with Wi-Fi Adapter

- 1. *To connect the device to a fiber optic line*: connect your SFP transceiver to the SFP port, then connect the fiber optic cable to the SFP transceiver.
- 2. *To connect via USB modem*: connect your USB modem to the USB port⁸ located on the back panel of the router.

In some cases you will need to reboot the router after connection of the USB modem.

- 3. *To connect the device to an Ethernet line*: please connect the router to the ISP's Ethernet line only after setting the WAN port (see the *WAN Remapping* section, page 227) and creating an Internet connection (see the *WAN* section, page 83).
- 4. Connect a phone cable between an FXS port of the router and the phone.
- 5. Connect the power cord to the power connector port on the back panel of the router, then plug the power adapter into an electrical outlet or power strip.
- 6. Turn on the router by pressing the **ON/OFF** button on its back panel.
- 7. Make sure that the Wi-Fi adapter of your PC is on. As a rule, modern notebooks with builtin wireless NICs are equipped with a button or switch that turns on/off the wireless adapter (refer to your PC documents). If your PC is equipped with a pluggable wireless NIC, install the software provided with your Wi-Fi adapter.

Then make sure that your Wi-Fi adapter is configured to obtain an IP address automatically (as DHCP client).

⁸ It is recommended to use a USB extension cable to connect a USB modem to the router.

Obtaining IP Address Automatically and Connecting to Wireless Network (OS Windows 7)

- 1. Click the **Start** button and proceed to the **Control Panel** window.
- Select the Network and Sharing Center section. (If the Control Panel has the category view (the Category value is selected from the View by drop-down list in the top right corner of the window), choose the View network status and tasks line under the Network and Internet section.)

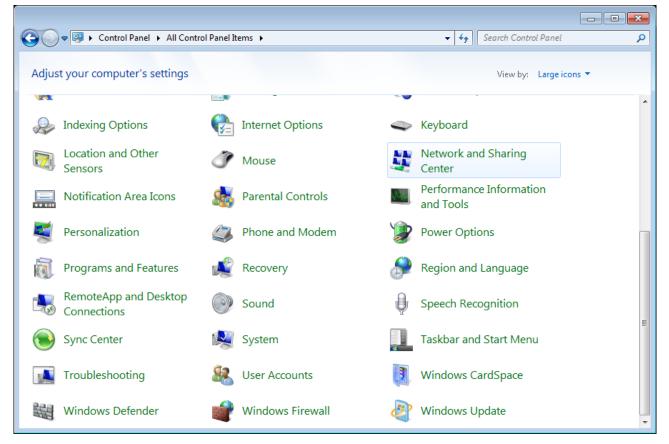


Figure 14. The Control Panel window.

- 3. In the menu located on the left part of the window, select the **Change adapter settings** line.
- 4. In the opened window, right-click the relevant **Wireless Network Connection** icon. Make sure that your Wi-Fi adapter is on, then select the **Properties** line in the menu displayed.
- 5. In the Wireless Network Connection Properties window, on the Networking tab, select the Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4) line. Click the Properties button.

6. Make sure that the **Obtain an IP address automatically** and **Obtain DNS server** address automatically choices of the radio buttons are selected. Click the **OK** button.

Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4)	Properties
General Alternate Configuration	
You can get IP settings assigned autor this capability. Otherwise, you need to for the appropriate IP settings.	
Obtain an IP address automatical	Iy.
Use the following IP address: —	
IP address:	· · · · ·
Subnet mask:	
Default gateway:	
Obtain DNS server address autor	natically
OUSE the following DNS server add	Iresses:
Preferred DNS server:	· · · ·
Alternate DNS server:	
Vaļidate settings upon exit	Ad <u>v</u> anced
	OK Cancel

Figure 15. The Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4) Properties window.

- 7. Click the **OK** button in the connection properties window.
- 8. To open the list of available wireless networks, select the icon of the wireless network connection and click the **Connect To** button or left-click the network icon in the notification area located on the right side of the taskbar.

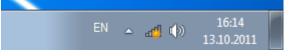


Figure 16. The notification area of the taskbar.

In the opened Wireless Network Connection window, select the wireless network DVG-5402G (for operating in the 2.4GHz band) or DVG-5402G-5G (for operating in the 5GHz band) and click the Connect button.

Not connected	+,
Connections are availabl	e
Wi-Fi	^
wireless router	<u>Connect</u>
Open Network and Sharin	ig Center

Figure 17. The list of available networks.

- 10. In the opened window, enter the network key (see WPS PIN on the barcode label on the bottom panel of the device) in the **Security key** field and click the **OK** button.
- 11. Wait for about 20-30 seconds. After the connection is established, the network icon will be displayed as the signal level scale.
- If you perform initial configuration of the router via Wi-Fi connection, note that immediately after changing the wireless default settings of the router you will need to reconfigure the wireless connection using the newly specified settings.

Obtaining IP Address Automatically and Connecting to Wireless Network (OS Windows 10)

- 1. Click the **Start** button and proceed to the **Settings** window.
- 2. Select the Network & Internet section.

Settings				_	×
	Windows	Settin	igs		
	Find a setting		٩		
므	System Display, sound, notifications, power		Devices Bluetooth, printers, mouse		
	Phone Link your Android, iPhone		Network & Internet Wi-Fi, airplane mode, VPN		
Ţ	Personalization Background, lock screen, colors		Apps Uninstall, defaults, optional features		
8	Accounts Your accounts, email, sync, work, family	A≠	Time & Language Speech, region, date		

Figure 18. The Windows Settings window.

- 3. In the **Change your network settings** section, select the **Change adapter options** line.
- 4. In the opened window, right-click the relevant **Wireless Network Connection** icon. Make sure that your Wi-Fi adapter is on, then select the **Properties** line in the menu displayed.
- 5. In the Wireless Network Connection Properties window, on the Networking tab, select the Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4) line. Click the Properties button.

6. Make sure that the **Obtain an IP address automatically** and **Obtain DNS server** address automatically choices of the radio buttons are selected. Click the **OK** button.

Internet i	Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4) Properti	es		×
General	Alternate Configuration				
this cap	n get IP settings assigned auto ability. Otherwise, you need t appropriate IP settings.				
	otain an IP address automatica	lly			
	e the following IP address: —				
IP ac	ldress:		1.1]
Subr	iet mask:		1.]
Defa	ult gateway:]
() ()	otain DNS server address auto	matically			
-O Us	e the following DNS server ad	dresses:-			
Pref	erred DNS server:		1.]
Alter	nate DNS server:]
. v	alidate settings upon exit			Advar	nced
			OK		Cancel

Figure 19. The Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4) Properties window.

- 7. Click the **Close** button in the connection properties window.
- 8. To open the list of available wireless networks, select the icon of the wireless network connection and click the **Connect To** button or left-click the network icon in the notification area located on the right side of the taskbar.

	N	lot co	onne	cted	- Conr	nections are a	available
~		Ϋæ	€	¢×	ENG	10:34 AM 2/20/2020	\Box

Figure 20. The notification area of the taskbar.

In the opened Wireless Network Connection window, select the wireless network DVG-5402G (for operating in the 2.4GHz band) or DVG-5402G-5G (for operating in the 5GHz band) and click the Connect button.

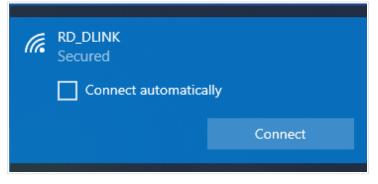


Figure 21. The list of available networks.

- 10. In the opened window, enter the network key (see WPS PIN on the barcode label on the bottom panel of the device) in the **Security key** field and click the **Next** button.
- 11. Allow or forbid your PC to be discoverable by other devices on this network (**Yes / No**).

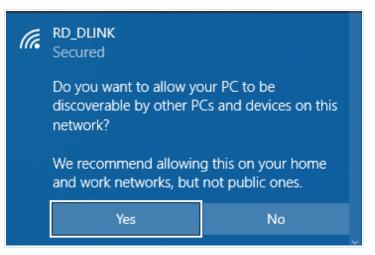


Figure 22. PC discovery settings.

- 12. Wait for about 20-30 seconds. After the connection is established, the network icon will be displayed as a dot with curved lines indicating the signal level.
- If you perform initial configuration of the router via Wi-Fi connection, note that immediately after changing the wireless default settings of the router you will need to reconfigure the wireless connection using the newly specified settings.

Connecting to Web-based Interface

When you have configured your computer, you can access the web-based interface and configure needed parameters (create a WAN connection, change the parameters of the wireless network, specify the settings of the firewall, etc.).

<u>Clients connected to the router with default settings do not have access to the Internet. To</u> <u>get started, please set your own password used to access the web-based interface and, if</u> <u>needed, configure other settings recommended by your ISP.</u>

Start a web browser (see the *Before You Begin* section, page 23). In the address bar of the web browser, enter the domain name of the router (by default, **dlinkrouter.local**) with a dot at the end and press the **Enter** key. Also you can enter the IP address of the device (by default, **192.168.8.254**).



Figure 23. Connecting to the web-based interface of the DVG-5402G/GF device.

If the error "*The page cannot be displayed*" (or "*Unable to display the page*"/"*Could not connect to remote server*") occurs upon connecting to the web-based interface of the router, make sure that you have properly connected the router to your computer.

If the device has not been configured previously or the default settings have been restored, after access to the web-based interface the Initial Configuration Wizard opens (see the *Initial Configuration Wizard* section, page 50).

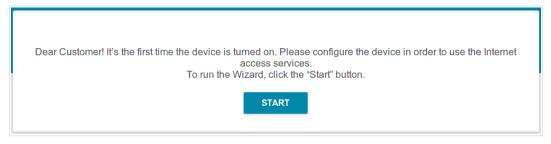


Figure 24. The page for running the Initial Configuration Wizard.

If you configured the device previously, after access to the web-based interface the login page opens. Enter the username (admin) in the **Username** field and the password you specified in the **Password** field, then click the **LOGIN** button.

Authori	zation	
Username*		
Password*		
••		Ø
St	ay signed in	
Forgot pas	sword?	
	Authorization error	
	Attempts remaining: 4	
LOGIN	CLEAR	

Figure 25. The login page.

In order not to log out, move the **Stay signed in** switch to the right. After closing the web browser or rebooting the device, you need to enter the username and the password again.

If you enter a wrong password several times, the web-based interface will be blocked for a while. Please wait for one minute and reenter the password you specified.

Web-based Interface Structure

Summary Page

On the **Summary** page, detailed information on the device state is displayed.

😑 < Home		Sum	mary	
Device Information			WAN IPv4	
Model:	DVG-540)2G	Connection type:	Static IPv4
Hardware version:		S1	Status:	Connected 🔵
Firmware version:	4	.0.5	MAC address	74:DA:DA:00:54:10
Build time:	Thu Sep 29 2022 12:21:00 PM N	ISK	IP address:	192.168.161.189
UI version:	1.35.0.d2a6d9e-embed	ded		
Vendor:	D-Link Ru	ssia		
Serial number:	DVG5402GF1	111	LAN	
Support:	support@dlinl	c.ru	LAN IPv4:	192.168.8.254
Summary:	Root filesystem image DVG_5402GF_RT96		Wireless connections:	-
Uptime:	5 days 16 h. 45 n	nin.	Wired connections:	1
Device mode:	Rou	iter		
Wi-Fi 2.4 GHz			LAN Ports	Off
Status:	On	-	LAN4:	1000M-Full
Broadcasting:	On	-	LAN3:	Off
Additional networks:		0	LAN1:	Off
Network name (SSID):	DVG-5402G-5	- 1		
Security:	WPA2-PSK		USB Devices	
Wi-Fi 5 GHz			No connected devices	
Status:	On	-	VoIP	
Broadcasting:	On	-	DUOD ention 100 status	
Additional networks:		0	DHCP option 120 status	
Network name (SSID):	DVG-5402G-5G-5	- 1	DHCP option 120:	Enabled
Security:	WPA2-PSK	6	Option value is not received	

Figure 26. The summary page.

The **Device Information** section displays the model and hardware version of the router, the firmware version, and other data.

To contact the technical support group (to send an e-mail), left-click the support e-mail address. After clicking the line, the e-mail client window for sending a new letter to the specified address opens.

To change the operation mode of the device, left-click the name of the mode in the **Device mode** line. In the opened window, click the **Initial Configuration Wizard** link (for the detailed description of the Wizard, see the *Initial Configuration Wizard* section, page 50).

The **Wi-Fi 2.4 GHz** and **Wi-Fi 5 GHz** sections display data on the state of the device's wireless network, its name and the authentication type, and availability of an additional wireless network in the relevant band.

In the **WAN** section, data on the type and status of the existing WAN connection are displayed.

In the **LAN** section, the IPv4 and IPv6 address of the router and the number of wired and wireless clients of the device are displayed.

The **LAN Ports** section displays the state of the device's LAN ports and data transfer mode of active ports.

The **USB Devices** section displays the device connected to the USB port of the router.

The **VoIP** section displays data on the status of the existing VoIP lines, phones, and DHCP option 120.

Home Page

The **Home** page displays links to the most frequently used pages with device's settings.

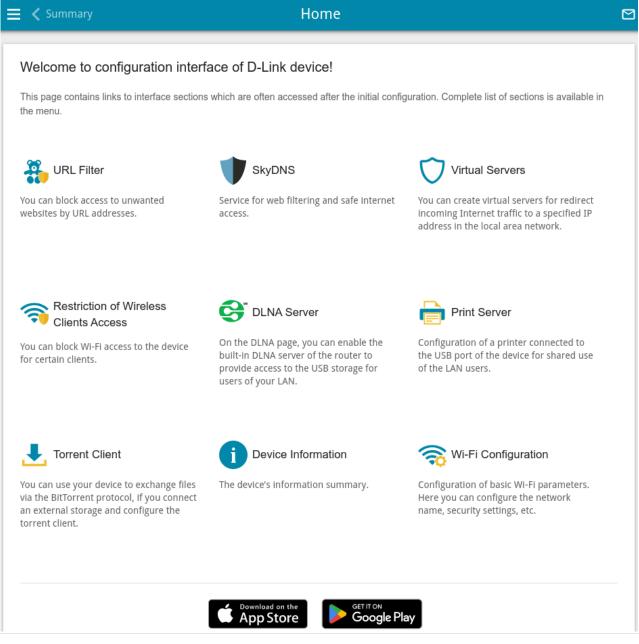


Figure 27. The Home page.

Other settings of the router are available in the menu in the left part of the page.

Menu Sections

To configure the router use the menu in the left part of the page.

In the **Initial Configuration** section you can run the Initial Configuration Wizard. The Wizard allows you to configure the router for operation in the needed mode and specify all parameters necessary for getting started (for the description of the Wizard, see the *Initial Configuration Wizard* section, page 50).

The pages of the **Statistics** section display data on the current state of the router (for the description of the pages, see the *Statistics* section, page 74).

The pages of the **Connections Setup** section are designed for configuring basic parameters of the LAN interface of the router and creating a connection to the Internet (for the description of the pages, see the *Connections Setup* section, page 83).

The pages of the **VPN** section are designed for configuring VPN connections based on IPsec/GRE/EoGRE/EoIP/IPIP protocols and creating a PPTP or L2TP server and accounts for access to it (for the description of the pages, see the *VPN* section, page 143).

The pages of the **Wi-Fi** section are designed for specifying all needed settings of the router's wireless network (for the description of the pages, see the *Wi-Fi* section, page 167).

The **Print Server** section is designed for configuring the router as a print server (see the *Print Server* section, page 199).

The pages of the **USB Storage** section are designed for operating the connected USB storage (for the description of the pages, see the *USB Storage* section, page 200).

The pages of the **USB Modem** section are designed for operating the connected 3G or LTE USB modem (for the description of the pages, see the *USB Modem* section, page 216).

The pages of the **Advanced** section are designed for configuring additional parameters of the router (for the description of the pages, see the *Advanced* section, page 223).

The pages of the **VoIP** section are designed for specifying all settings needed for VoIP (for the description of the pages, see the *VoIP* section, page 254).

The pages of the **Firewall** section are designed for configuring the firewall of the router (for the description of the pages, see the *Firewall* section, page 292).

The pages of the **System** section provide functions for managing the internal system of the router (for the description of the pages, see the *System* section, page 313).

The pages of the **SkyDNS** section are designed for configuring the SkyDNS web content filtering service (for the description of the pages, see the *SkyDNS* section, page 342).

To exit the web-based interface, click the **Logout** line of the menu.

Notifications

The router's web-based interface displays notifications in the top right part of the page.



Figure 28. The web-based interface notifications.

Click the icon displaying the number of notifications to view the complete list and click the relevant button.

CHAPTER 4. CONFIGURING VIA WEB-BASED INTERFACE

Initial Configuration Wizard

To start the Initial Configuration Wizard, go to the **Initial Configuration** section. On the opened page, click the **OK** button and wait until the factory default settings are restored.

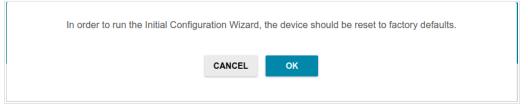


Figure 29. Restoring the default settings in the Wizard.

If you perform initial configuration of the router via Wi-Fi connection, please make sure that you are connected to the wireless network **DVG-5402G** (for operating in the 2.4GHz band) or **DVG-5402G-5G** (for operating in the 5GHz band) and click the **NEXT** button.

Factory defaults are restored
See your wireless network name and password on the barcode label on the device.
If you are connected via Wi-Fi, please make sure that you have not switched automatically to another wireless network.
NEXT

Figure 30. Checking connection to the wireless network.

Click the **START** button.

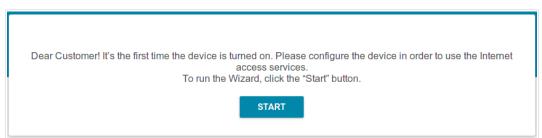


Figure 31. Starting the Wizard.

On the opened page, click **YES** in order to leave the current language of the web-based interface or click **NO** to select another language.



Figure 32. Selecting a language.

You can finish the wizard earlier and go to the menu of the web-based interface. To do this, click the **ADVANCED SETTINGS** button. On the opened page, change the default settings: specify the administrator password in the **User's interface password** and **Password confirmation** and the name of the wireless network in the 2.4GHz and 5GHz bands in the **Network name 2.4 GHz** (**SSID**) and **Network name 5 GHz** (**SSID**) fields correspondingly. Then click the **APPLY** button.

In order to start up, please change several default settings. User's interface password* Password should be between 1 and 31 ASCII characters Password confirmation* Network name 2.4 GHz (SSID)* DVG-XXX Network name 5 GHz (SSID)*	User's interface password* Password should be between 1 and 31 ASCII characters Password confirmation* Network name 2.4 GHz (SSID)* DVG-XXX
Password should be between 1 and 31 ASCII characters Password confirmation* Network name 2.4 GHz (SSID)* DVG-XXX Network name 5 GHz (SSID)*	Password should be between 1 and 31 ASCII characters Password confirmation* Network name 2.4 GHz (SSID)* DVG-XXX Network name 5 GHz (SSID)*
Password confirmation* Network name 2.4 GHz (SSID)* DVG-XXX Network name 5 GHz (SSID)*	Password confirmation* Network name 2.4 GHz (SSID)* DVG-XXX Network name 5 GHz (SSID)*
Network name 2.4 GHz (SSID)* DVG-XXX Network name 5 GHz (SSID)*	Network name 2.4 GHz (SSID)* DVG-XXX Network name 5 GHz (SSID)*
DVG-XXX Network name 5 GHz (SSID)*	DVG-XXX Network name 5 GHz (SSID)*
Network name 5 GHz (SSID)*	Network name 5 GHz (SSID)*
	DVG-XXX-5G

Figure 33. Changing the default settings.

To continue the configuration of the router via the Wizard, click the **CONTINUE** button.

Selecting Operation Mode

Select the needed operation mode and click the **NEXT** button.

Router

In order to connect your device to a fiber optic line, on the **Device mode** page, from the **Connection method** list, select the **Fiber (SFP)** value. Then from the **Work mode** list, select the **Router** value. In this mode you can configure a WAN connection, set your own settings for the wireless network in the 2.4GHz and 5GHz bands, configure LAN ports to connect an STB or VoIP phone, and set your own password for access to the web-based interface of the device.

Device mode		
Connection method		
Fiber (SFP)	•	
Work mode		ssiD
Router	•	
	К ВАСК	NEXT >

Figure 34. Selecting an operation mode. The Router mode.

In order to connect your device to the network of a 3G or LTE operator, on the **Device mode** page, from the **Connection method** list, select the **Mobile Internet** value. In this mode you can configure a 3G/LTE WAN connection, set your own settings for the wireless network in the 2.4GHz and 5GHz bands, and set your own password for access to the web-based interface of the device.



Figure 35. Selecting an operation mode. The Mobile Internet mode.

In order to connect your device to a wireless ISP (WISP), on the **Device mode** page, from the **Connection method** list, select the **Wi-Fi** value. Then from the **Work mode** list select the **WISP Repeater** value. In this mode you can connect your device to another access point, configure a WAN connection, set your own settings for the wireless network in the 2.4GHz and 5GHz bands, and set your own password for access to the web-based interface of the device.

Device mode	
Connection method	-
Work mode WISP Repeater	SSID_Ext

Figure 36. Selecting an operation mode. The WISP Repeater mode.

Access Point or Repeater

In order to connect your device to a wired router for adding a wireless network to the existing local network, on the **Device mode** page, from the **Connection method** list, select the **Fiber (SFP)** value. Then from the **Work mode** list select the **Access point** value. In this mode you can change the LAN IP address, set your own settings for the wireless network in the 2.4GHz and 5GHz bands, and set your own password for access to the web-based interface of the device.

Device mode			
Connection method			
Fiber (SFP)	•		
Work mode			SSID
Access point	•		
	< ВАСК	NEXT >	

Figure 37. Selecting an operation mode. The Access point mode.

In order to connect your device to a wireless router for extending the range of the existing wireless network, on the **Device mode** page, from the **Connection method** list, select the **Wi-Fi** value. Then from the **Work mode** list select the **Repeater** value. In this mode you can change the LAN IP address, connect your device to another access point, set your own settings for the wireless network in the 2.4GHz and 5GHz bands, and set your own password for access to the web-based interface of the device.

•	
-	
🗸 ВАСК	
	Ţ Ţ BACK

Figure 38. Selecting an operation mode. The Repeater mode.

In order to let wired PCs connected to your device access the network of a wireless router, on the **Device mode** page, from the **Connection method** list, select the **Wi-Fi** value. Then from the **Work mode** list select the **Client** value. In this mode you can change the LAN IP address, connect your device to another access point, and set your own password for access to the web-based interface of the device.

Device mode		
Connection method Wi-Fi	.	
Work mode		
	< BACK NEXT >	

Figure 39. Selecting an operation mode. The **Client** mode.

Creating 3G/LTE WAN Connection

This configuration step is available for the **Mobile Internet** mode.

1. If the PIN code check is enabled for the SIM card inserted into your USB modem, enter the PIN code in the **PIN** field and click the **APPLY** button.

Modem S	settings		
Vendor: Model:	E3131		
Modem E3131		.	
Please ente Modem: E3 Attempts le		SIM card	
PIN*		Ø	
		APPLY	
		< BACK NEXT >	

Figure 40. The page for entering the PIN code.

2. Please wait while the router automatically creates a WAN connection for your mobile operator.

Modem S	ettings				
Vendor: Model:	E3131				
Modem E3131					
The connect	tion has been created a to continue configuratic	utomatically.			
		🗙 ВАСК	NEXT >		

Figure 41. The page for creating 3G/LTE connection.

3. Click the **NEXT** button.

If the router failed to create a WAN connection automatically, click the **CONFIGURE MANUALLY** button. On the **Modem Settings** page, configure all needed settings and click the **NEXT** button.

Changing LAN IPv4 Address

This configuration step is available for the Access point, Repeater, and Client modes.

- 1. Select the **Automatic obtainment of IPv4 address** to let DVG-5402G/GF automatically obtain the LAN IPv4 address.
- 2. In the **Hostname** field, you should specify a domain name of the router using which you can access the web-based interface after finishing the Wizard. Enter a new domain name of the router ending with **.local** or leave the value suggested by the router.



In order to access the web-based interface using the domain name, in the address bar of the web browser, enter the name of the router with a dot at the end.

If you want to manually assign the LAN IPv4 address for DVG-5402G/GF, do not select the **Automatic obtainment of IPv4 address** checkbox and fill in the **IP address**, **Subnet mask**, **DNS IP address**, **Hostname** fields and, if needed, the **Gateway IP address** field. Make sure that the assigned address does not coincide with the LAN IPv4 address of the router to which your device connects.

 Automatic obtainment of IPv4 address ▲ Automatic obtainment of IPv4 address sufficiently protects against use of the same addresses in one LAN. In order to avoid IPv4 address conflicts, static IPv4 addresses of LAN devises should not coincide with addresses from the address raassigned by an upper-level router (or a local DHCP server). IP address* 192.168.8.254 Subnet mask* 255.255.255.0
avoid IPv4 address conflicts, static IPv4 addresses of LAN devises should not coincide with addresses from the address ra assigned by an upper-level router (or a local DHCP server). IP address* 192.168.8.254 Subnet mask*
192.168.8.254 Subnet mask*
Subnet mask*
255.255.255.0
Gateway IP address
DNS IP address*
8.8.8.8
Hostname*
dlinkap799b.local

Figure 42. The page for changing the LAN IPv4 address.

3. Click the **NEXT** button to continue or click the **BACK** button to return to the previous page.

Wi-Fi Client

This configuration step is available for the WISP Repeater, Repeater, and Client modes.

1. On the **Wi-Fi Client** page, click the **WIRELESS NETWORKS** button and select the network to which you want to connect in the opened window. When you select a network, the **Network name (SSID)** and **BSSID** fields are filled in automatically.

If you cannot find the needed network in the list, click the **UPDATE LIST** icon (\square).

2. If a password is needed to connect to the selected network, fill in the relevant field. Click the **Show** icon (**N**) to display the entered password.

Frequency band		
2.4 GHz	-	 Attention! Upon connection to networks with WEP or TK encryption, basic settings of Wi-Fi networks will be changed:
Network name (SSID)*		the standards 802.11b and g will be used in the 2.4GHz band and the standard 802.11a will be used in the 5GHz band.
RD_DLINK		Network authentication
BSSID		WPA2-PSK
74:DA:DA:0A:8F:C9		
		Password PSK*
		③ Password should be between 8 and 63 ASCII character
		Encryption type*
		AES
WIRELESS NETWORKS		

Figure 43. The page for configuring the Wi-Fi client.

If you connect to a hidden network, select the band where the hidden network operates from the **Frequency band** list and enter the network name in the **Network name (SSID)** field. Then select a needed value from the **Network authentication** list and then, if needed, enter the password in the relevant field.

When the **Open** or **WEP** authentication type is selected, the following settings are displayed on the page:

Parameter	Description
	For Open authentication type only.
Enable encryption WEP	The checkbox activating WEP encryption. When the checkbox is selected, the Default key ID drop-down list, the Encryption key WEP as HEX checkbox, and four Encryption key fields are displayed on the page.
Default key ID	The number of the key (from first to fourth) which will be used for WEP encryption.
Encryption key WEP as HEX	Select the checkbox to set a hexadecimal number as a key for encryption.
Encryption key (1-4)	Keys for WEP encryption. The router uses the key selected from the Default key ID drop-down list. It is required to specify all the fields. Click the Show icon (\bigotimes) to display the entered key.

When the WPA-PSK, WPA2-PSK, WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK mixed, WPA3-SAE, and WPA2-PSK/WPA3-SAE mixed authentication type is selected, the following fields are displayed:

Parameter	Description
Password PSK	A password for WPA encryption. Click the Show icon (\bigotimes) to display the entered password.
Encryption type	An encryption method: TKIP , AES , or TKIP+AES . TKIP and TKIP+AES encryption types are not available for WPA3-SAE and WPA2-PSK/WPA3-SAE mixed authentication types.

3. Click the **NEXT** button to continue or click the **BACK** button to return to the previous page.

Configuring Wired WAN Connection

This configuration step is available for the **Router** and **WISP Repeater** modes.

- You should configure your WAN connection in accordance with data provided by your Internet service provider (ISP). Make sure that you have obtained all necessary information prior to configuring your connection. Otherwise contact your ISP.
- 1. On the **Internet connection type** page, click the **SCAN** button (available for the **Router** mode only) to automatically specify the connection type used by your ISP or manually select the needed value from the **Connection type** list.
- 2. Specify the settings necessary for the connection of the selected type.
- 3. If a particular MAC address was registered by your ISP upon concluding the agreement, from the MAC address assignment method drop-down list (available for the Router mode only), select the Manual value and enter this address in the MAC address field. Choose the Clone MAC address of your device value to place the MAC address of your network interface card in the field, or leave the Default MAC address value to place the router's WAN interface MAC address in the field.
- 4. If the Internet access is provided via a VLAN channel, select the **Use VLAN** checkbox and fill in the **VLAN ID** field (available for the **Router** mode only).
- 5. Click the **NEXT** button to continue or click the **BACK** button to return to the previous page.

Static IPv4 Connection

Connection type	
Static IPv4	•
-	his type allows you to use a fixed IP address provided by your ISP.
SCAN	Network scan for connection type and parameters detection
IP address*	
Subnet mask*	
Gateway IP addres	ss*
DNS IP address*	
MAC address assignmer Default MAC addr	
-	
Default MAC addr	ess 👻
Default MAC addr MAC address 74:DA:DA:00:54:10	ess 🔹
Default MAC addr MAC address 74:DA:DA:00:54:10	ess •
Default MAC addr MAC address 74:DA:DA:00:54:10 (i) In some ISP's ne Use VLAN	ess •
Default MAC addr MAC address 74:DA:DA:00:54:10 (i) In some ISP's ne Use VLAN	ess -
Default MAC addr MAC address 74:DA:DA:00:54:10 (i) In some ISP's ne Use VLAN (i) Select the check V Use IGMP	ess -
Default MAC addr MAC address 74:DA:DA:00:54:10 (i) In some ISP's ne Use VLAN (i) Select the check V Use IGMP	ess -
Default MAC addr MAC address 74:DA:DA:00:54:10 (i) In some ISP's ne Use VLAN (i) Select the check Use IGMP (i) Internet Group IN Ping	ess -

Figure 44. The page for configuring Static IPv4 WAN connection.

Fill in the following fields: IP address, Subnet mask, Gateway IP address, and DNS IP address.

Static IPv6 Connection

Internet connec	tion type
Connection type	
Static IPv6	•
(i) A connection of the	nis type allows you to use a fixed IP address provided by your ISP.
SCAN	Network scan for connection type and parameters detection
IP address*	
Prefix*	
Gateway IP addres	S*
DNS IP address*	
MAC address assignment	method
Default MAC addre	ess 👻
MAC address	
74:DA:DA:00:54:10	
0	
Use VLAN	works, it is required to register a certain MAC address in order to get access to the Internet.
	oox if the Internet access is provided via a VLAN channel.
Ping	
Enable automatic	creation of Mobile Internet connection

Figure 45. The page for configuring Static IPv6 WAN connection.

Fill in the following fields: IP address, Prefix, Gateway IP address, and DNS IP address.

PPPOE, IPv6 PPPoE, PPPoE Dual Stack, PPPoE + Dynamic IP (PPPoE Dual Access) Connections

Internet connection type	
Connection type	
PPPoE	•
 A connection of this type requires a user name an 	nd password.
SCAN Network scan for connection	on type and parameters detection
Without authorization	
without authorization	
Username*	
Password*	
rassword	
Service name	
MAC address assignment method	
Default MAC address	•
MAC address	
74:DA:DA:00:54:10	
(i) In some ISP's networks, it is required to register a	a certain MAC address in order to get access to the Internet.
	, i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i
Use VLAN	
 Select the checkbox if the Internet access is prov 	ided via a VLAN channel.
Ping	
 Enable automatic creation of Mobile Internet connecti 	ion
_	
< в	

Figure 46. The page for configuring PPPoE WAN connection.

In the **Username** field enter the login and in the **Password** field enter the password provided by your ISP. Click the **Show** icon (∞) to display the entered password. If authorization is not required, select the **Without authorization** checkbox.

PPPoE + Static IP	(PPPoE Dual Access)) Connection
		001110001011

onnection type	
PPPoE + Static IP (PPP	oE Dual Access) -
(i) A connection of this typ	e requires a user name, passwo
SCAN Net	work scan for connection typ
Without authorization	
Username*	
Password*	Ø
Service name	
IP address*	
Subnet mask*	
Gateway IP address*	
DNS IP address*	

Figure 47. The page for configuring PPPoE + Static IP (PPPoE Dual Access) WAN connection.

In the **Username** field enter the login and in the **Password** field enter the password provided by your ISP. Click the **Show** icon (∞) to display the entered password. If authorization is not required, select the **Without authorization** checkbox.

Also fill in the following fields: IP address, Subnet mask, Gateway IP address, and DNS IP address.

PPTP + Dynamic IP or L2TP + Dynamic IP Connection

Connection type		
PPTP + Dynamic	IP	•
-		
(i) PPTP and L2TP	are methods for implementing v	irtual private networks.
SCAN	Network scan for connect	ion type and parameters detection
Without authoriza	tion	
Username*		
Password*		Ø
rassworu		
rassword		
	ss*	
VPN server addres		
VPN server addres	nt method	•
VPN server addres MAC address assignmer Default MAC addr	nt method	
VPN server addres	nt method ess	✓
VPN server addres MAC address assignmer Default MAC addr MAC address	nt method ess	•
VPN server addres MAC address assignmer Default MAC addr MAC address 74:DA:DA:00:54:11	nt method ess	•
VPN server addres MAC address assignmer Default MAC addr MAC address 74:DA:DA:00:54:11	nt method ess	-
VPN server addres MAC address assignmer Default MAC addr MAC address 74:DA:DA:00:54:11 (i) In some ISP's ne Use VLAN	nt method ess	a certain MAC address in order to get access to the Internet.
VPN server addres MAC address assignmer Default MAC addr MAC address 74:DA:DA:00:54:11 () In some ISP's ne Use VLAN	nt method ess D ofworks, it is required to register	a certain MAC address in order to get access to the Internet.
VPN server address MAC address assignmer Default MAC addr MAC address 74:DA:DA:00:54:11 (i) In some ISP's ne Use VLAN (i) Select the check V Use IGMP	it method ess D itworks, it is required to register box if the Internet access is prot	a certain MAC address in order to get access to the Internet.
VPN server address MAC address assignmer Default MAC addr MAC address 74:DA:DA:00:54:11 () In some ISP's ne Use VLAN () Select the check V Use IGMP	it method ess D itworks, it is required to register box if the Internet access is prot	a certain MAC address in order to get access to the Internet.

Figure 48. The page for configuring PPTP + Dynamic IP WAN connection.

In the **Username** field enter the login and in the **Password** field enter the password provided by your ISP. Click the **Show** icon (∞) to display the entered password. If authorization is not required, select the **Without authorization** checkbox.

In the **VPN server address** field, enter the IP or URL address of the PPTP or L2TP authentication server.

PPTP + Stati	c IP or L2TP	+ Static IP	Connection

PTP + Static IP	•	
0 00000 11 0000		
PPTP and L2TP are I PPTP	methods for implementing virtual p	private networks.
SCAN	letwork scan for connection typ	pe and parameters detection
Without authorization		
_		
Username*		
Password*	Ø	•
VPN server address*		
IP address*		
Subnet mask*		
Gateway IP address*		

Figure 49. The page for configuring PPTP + Static IP WAN connection.

In the **Username** field enter the login and in the **Password** field enter the password provided by your ISP. Click the **Show** icon (∞) to display the entered password. If authorization is not required, select the **Without authorization** checkbox.

In the **VPN server address** field, enter the IP or URL address of the PPTP or L2TP authentication server.

Also fill in the following fields: IP address, Subnet mask, Gateway IP address, and DNS IP address.

Configuring Wireless Network

This configuration step is available for the **Mobile Internet**, **Router**, **Access point**, **WISP Repeater**, and **Repeater** modes.

- 1. On the **Wireless Network 2.4 GHz** page, in the **Network name** field, specify your own name for the wireless network in the 2.4GHz band or leave the value suggested by the router.
- 2. In the **Password** field, specify your own password for access to the wireless network or leave the value suggested by the router (WPS PIN of the device, see the barcode label).
- 3. If the router is used as a Wi-Fi client, you can specify the same parameters of the wireless network as specified for the network to which you are connecting. To do this, click the **USE** button (available for the **WISP Repeater** and **Repeater** modes only).
- 4. You can restore the parameters of the wireless network specified before resetting to factory defaults. To do this, click the **RESTORE** button.

Wireless Network 2.4 GHz	
 Enable Broadcast wireless network 2.4 GHz Disabling broadcast does not influence the ability to connect to another Wi-Fi network as a client. Network name* my wi-fi 	
The number of characters should not exceed 32 Open network Password*	
Password should be between 8 and 63 ASCII characters Use the same parameters as on the root access point.	
RESTORE You can restore network name and security that was set before applying factory settings.	

Figure 50. The page for configuring the wireless network.

If you want to create an additional wireless network isolated from your LAN in the 2.4GHz band, select the Enable guest network checkbox (available for the Mobile Internet, Router, and WISP Repeater modes only).

Enable guest network
① Guest Wi-Fi network allows connection to your device and getting access to the Internet. Upon that computers connected to this wireless network will be isolated from the resources of your main local area network. This helps to secure your LAN while you provide access to the Internet for temporary users.
Network name*
my wi-fi_Guest
() The number of characters should not exceed 32
Open network
Max associated clients*
0
Enable shaping
Shaping (Mbit/s)*
0

Figure 51. The page for configuring the wireless network.

- 6. In the **Network name** field, specify your own name for the guest wireless network or leave the value suggested by the router.
- 7. If you want to create a password for access to the guest wireless network, deselect the **Open network** checkbox and fill in the **Password** field.
- 8. If you want to limit the bandwidth of the guest wireless network, select the **Enable shaping** checkbox and fill in the **Shaping** field.
- 9. Click the **NEXT** button to continue or click the **BACK** button to specify other settings.
- 10. On the **Wireless Network 5 GHz** page, specify needed settings for the wireless network in the 5GHz band and click the **NEXT** button.

Configuring LAN Ports for IPTV/VoIP

This configuration step is available for the **Router** mode.

1. On the **IPTV** page, select the **Is an STB connected to the device** checkbox.

IPTV
Is an STB connected to the device?
() If your ISP provides IPTV service, you can connect an STB directly to the router without additional equipment
Use VLAN ID
VLAN ID*
SFP LAN4 LAN3 LAN2 LAN1
< BACK NEXT >

Figure 52. The page for selecting a LAN port to connect an IPTV set-top box.

- 2. Select a free LAN port for connecting your set-top box.
- 3. If the IPTV service is provided via a VLAN channel, select the **Use VLAN ID** checkbox and fill in the **VLAN ID** field.
- 4. Click the **NEXT** button to continue or click the **BACK** button to specify other settings.

5. On the VoIP page, select the Is an IP phone connected to the device checkbox.

VoIP
Is an IP phone connected to the device?
() If your ISP provides VoIP service, you can connect an IP phone directly to the router without additional equipment
Use VLAN ID
VLAN ID*
Information about the VLAN ID can be found in the contract. SFP LAN4 LAN3 LAN2 LAN1
< BACK NEXT >

Figure 53. The page for selecting a LAN port to connect a VoIP phone.

- 6. Select a free LAN port for connecting your IP phone.
- 7. If the VoIP service is provided via a VLAN channel, select the **Use VLAN ID** checkbox and fill in the **VLAN ID** field.
- 8. Click the **NEXT** button to continue or click the **BACK** button to specify other settings.

Changing Web-based Interface Password

On this page, you should change the default administrator password. To do this, enter a new password in the **User's interface password** and **Password confirmation** fields. You may set any password except **admin**. Use digits, Latin letters (uppercase and/or lowercase), and other characters available in the US keyboard layout.⁹

Changing web-based inter	face password	
For security reasons, please cha	nge the password used	to access the device's settings.
User's interface password*	Q	
() Password should be between 1	and 31 ASCII characters	
Password confirmation*	Ø	
	🗙 ВАСК	NEXT

Figure 54. The page for changing the web-based interface password.

Remember or write down the new password for the administrator account. In case of losing the new password, you can access the settings of the router only after restoring the factory

default settings via the hardware **RESET** button. This procedure wipes out all settings that you have configured for your router.

Click the **NEXT** button to continue or click the **BACK** button to return to the previous page.

On the next page, check all specified settings.

Also you can save a text file with parameters set by the Wizard to your PC. To do this, click the **SAVE CONFIGURATION FILE** button and follow the dialog box appeared.

To finish the Wizard, click the **APPLY** button. The router will apply settings and reboot. Click the **BACK** button to specify other settings.

^{9 0-9,} A-Z, a-z, space, !"#\$%&'()*+,-./:;<=>?@[\]^_`{|}~.

If the Wizard has configured a WAN connection, after clicking the **APPLY** button, the page for checking the Internet availability opens.

Connection to the Internet is configured and ready to use
Click "Finish" to get started on the Internet
ADVANCED SETTINGS FINISH
An application for smartphones and pads is available
Coven load on the App Store Google Play

Figure 55. Checking the Internet availability.

If the router has been successfully connected to the Internet, click the **FINISH** button.

If problems appeared when connecting to the Internet, click the **CHECK AGAIN** button to recheck the state of the WAN connection.

If problems of connection have not been solved, contact the technical support of your ISP (as a rule, the technical support phone is provided with the agreement) or the D-Link technical support (the phone number will be displayed on the page after several attempts of checking the connection).

To specify other settings, click the **ADVANCED SETTINGS** button. After clicking the **ADVANCED SETTINGS** button, the **Home** page opens (see the *Home Page* section, page 47).

Statistics

The pages of this section display data on the current state of the router:

- network statistics
- IP addresses leased by the DHCP server
- the routing rules and routing tables
- data on devices connected to the router's network and its web-based interface, and information on current sessions of these devices
- statistics for traffic passing through ports of the router
- addresses of active multicast groups
- statistics for IPsec tunnels of the router
- the list of clients connected to the PPTP or L2TP server of the router.

Network Statistics

On the **Statistics / Network Statistics** page, you can view statistics for all connections existing in the system (WAN connections, LAN, WLAN). For each connection the following data are displayed: name and state (when the connection is on, its name is highlighted in green, when the connection is off, its name is highlighted in red), IP address and subnet mask, and volume of data received and transmitted (with increase of the volume the units of measurement are changed automatically: byte, Kbyte, Mbyte, Gbyte).

Vetwork S	tatistics			
/ou can view sta	tistics for all interfaces (connections) existing in the sy	/stem.		
Name	IP - Gateway	Rx/Tx	Rx/Tx errors	Duration
AN	IPv4: 192.168.8.254/24	775.27 Kbyte / 9.13 Mbyte	0/0	-
statip_81	IPv4: 192.168.161.189/24 - 192.168.161.1	34.51 Mbyte / 44.10 Mbyte	0/0	5 h., 35 min
OVG-XXX	-	168.81 Kbyte / -	0/0	-
DVG-XXX-5G		209.00 byte / -	0/0	-

Figure 56. The Statistics / Network Statistics page.

To view detailed data on a connection, click the line corresponding to this connection.

DHCP

The **Statistics / DHCP** page displays the information on devices that have been identified by hostnames and MAC addresses and have got IP addresses from the DHCP server of the router.

😑 < Summary		DHCP		
DHCP You can view the list o	of IP addresses which local client	s obtained from the DHCP server.		
Hostname	IP address	MAC	Expires	
Galaxy-M21	192.168.0.154	66:C5:55:3D:D2:91	23h 55m 52s	

Figure 57. The Statistics / DHCP page.

Routing

The **Statistics / Routing** page displays the routing rules and routing tables.

ules						
Table	Туре	IP (Source/Destination)	Interfaces (Incoming/Outgoing)	Priority	ToS	FWmark (HEX)
group_1	IPv4	all / all	any / any	100	0	0x65
dhcp_1	IPv4	all / all	any / any	200	0	0x64
group_1	IPv4	all / all	LAN / any	300	0	0x0
main	IPv4	all / all	any / any	32766	0	0x0
group_1	IPv6	all / all	any / any	100	0	0x65
dhcp_1	IPv6	all / all	any / any	200	0	0x64
main	IPv6	all / all	any / any	32766	0	0x0
ables						
ID		Name	Description			
254		main	Main routing table			
1000		voip	Routing table for connections			
256		dhcp_1	Routing table for connections			
257		group_1	Routing table for groups			

Figure 58. The Statistics / Routing page.

The **Rules** section displays routing rules, their corresponding routing tables, incoming and outgoing interfaces, priority levels, and other data.

The **Tables** section displays the list of routing tables stored in the device's memory. To view detailed information on routes, left-click the relevant line in the table.

User Manual

🗮 < Routing	g	Routin	ig Table				
Routing Tal	ble main information on routes.						
Interface	Destination	Subnet mask	Gateway	Flags	Metric	Table	
LAN	192.168.8.0	255.255.255.0		U	0	254	

Figure 59. The routing table page.

The opened page displays the information on routes in the selected routing table. The table contains destination IP addresses, gateways, subnet masks, and other data.

Clients and Sessions

On the **Statistics / Clients and Sessions** page, you can view the list of devices connected to the local network of the router and information on current sessions of each device.

Routing	Client	s and Sessions			
Clients You can view the list of devices	connected to the local network	k of the router and infor	mation on current sess	ions of each device.	
MAC	IP address	Hostname	Flags	Interface	
00:13:46:62:2F:4C	192.168.8.2	-	reachable	LAN	

Figure 60. The Statistics / Clients and Sessions page.

For each device the following data are displayed: the IP address, the MAC address, and the network interface to which the device is connected.

To view the information on current sessions of a device, select this device in the table. On the opened page, the following data for each session of the selected device will be displayed: the protocol for network packet transmission, the source IP address and port, and the destination IP address and port.

Port Statistics

On the **Statistics / Port Statistics** page, you can view statistics for traffic passing through ports of the router. The information shown on the page can be used for diagnosing connection problems.

🔳 🔇 Su	ımmary	Port Statistics		
Port Sta You can view		ough ports of the device. This information	can be used for diagnosing connection problems.	
Port	Status	Traffic sent, Mbyte	Traffic received, Mbyte	
SFP	Disconnected	0	0	
LAN4	Connected	0	0	
LAN3	Disconnected	0	0	
LAN2	Connected	65	43	
LAN1	Disconnected	0	0	

Figure 61. The Statistics / Port Statistics page.

To view the full list of counters for a port, click the line corresponding to this port.

Multicast Groups

The **Statistics / Multicast Groups** page displays addresses of active multicast groups (including IPTV channels and groups for transferring service information) to which the device is subscribed, and the interface through which the device is subscribed.

You can view addresses of active multicast groups (including IPTV channels and groups for transferring service information) to which the device is subscribed, and the interface through which the device is subscribed.					
	IPv6				
interface	IP address	Interface			
_AN					
	e device is subscribed.	nterface IP address			

Figure 62. The Statistics / Multicast Groups page.

IPsec Statistics

On the **Statistics / IPsec Statistics** page, you can view statistics for IPsec tunnels of the router. For each tunnel the following data are displayed: name and state (when the connection is on, its name is highlighted in green, when the connection is off, its name is highlighted in red), remote host address or domain name, connection type and mode, and number of packets and volume of data received and transmitted.

Psec Sta	atistics				
ou can view	statistics for IPsec tu	innels.			
Name	Remote host	Packets received / Packets sent	Traffic received / Traffic sent	Mode	Туре

Figure 63. The Statistics / IPsec Statistics page.

To view detailed data on a tunnel, click the line corresponding to this tunnel.

VPN Statistics

On the **Statistics / VPN Statistics** page, you can view the list of clients connected to the PPTP or L2TP server of the router.

≡ < 1	Psec Statistics	VPN Stati	stics			
	VPN Statistics You can view statistics for PPTP/L2TP VPN servers connections.					
Login	Client IP address	Packets sent / Packets received	Traffic sent / Traffic received	Connection type		
test	10.90.90.2/32	7/7	87.00 byte / 93.00 byte	РРТР		

Figure 64. The Statistics / VPN Statistics page.

For each VPN client the following data are displayed: the unique IP address, username, connection type, and number of packets and volume of data received and transmitted.

To view detailed data on a connected VPN client, click the line corresponding to this client.

Connections Setup

In this menu you can configure basic parameters of the router's local area network and configure connection to the Internet (a WAN connection).

WAN

On the **Connections Setup / WAN** page, you can create and edit connections used by the router.

By default, a **Dynamic IPv4** connection is configured in the system. It is assigned to the **SFP** port of the router.

≡	〈 Summary	WAN	
	WAN		
	You can create and edit connections used by the router.		
	Dynamic IPv4		
	EDIT RECONNECT		
	Connection type:		Dynamic IPv4
	Status:		Connected
	Interface:		LAN2
	IP address:	19	2.168.161.243
	Subnet mask:		255.255.255.0
	Gateway IP address:		192.168.161.1
	CHANGE CONFIGURATION ADVANCED MODE		

Figure 65. The Connections Setup / WAN page. The simplified mode.

To edit an existing connection, click the **EDIT** button. On the opened page, change the needed parameters and click the **APPLY** button.

To disconnect a connection and establish it again, click the **RECONNECT** button.

To remove an existing connection and create a new one, click the **CHANGE CONFIGURATION** button. Upon that the connection creation page opens.

To create several WAN connections, go to the advanced mode. To do this, click the **ADVANCED MODE** button.

When connections of some types are created, the **Connections Setup / WAN** page is automatically displayed in the advanced mode.

User Manual

=	< S	Summary		WAN	ß		
	WAN ⁄ou cai		edit connections used by the router.				
	Default Gateway IPv4 The specified connection will be used by default. dynip			Default Gateway I No IPv6 connection create			
	IGMP On the IGMP page you can allow the router to use IGMP and configure its settings.						
	Conr	Name	LIST RECONNECT + 🗍	Interface	Status		
		dynip	Dynamic IPv4	LAN2	Connected		
	SIMP		E				

Figure 66. The Connections Setup / WAN page. The advanced mode.

To create a new connection, click the **ADD** button (+) in the **Connections List** section. Upon that the connection creation page opens.

To edit an existing connection, in the **Connections List** section, left-click the relevant line in the table. On the opened page, change the needed parameters and click the **APPLY** button.

To disconnect a connection and establish it again, select the checkbox located to the left of the relevant line in the table and click the **RECONNECT** button.

To remove a connection, in the Connections List section, select the checkbox located to the left

of the relevant line in the table and click the **DELETE** button ($\overline{\mathbf{10}}$).

To allow multicast traffic (e.g. streaming video) for a connection, click the **IGMP** link (for the description of the page, see the *IGMP* section, page 246).

To use one of existing WAN connections as the default IPv4 or IPv6 connection, in the **Default Gateway** section, select the choice of the radio button which corresponds to this connection.

To return to the simplified mode, click the **SIMPLIFIED MODE** button (the button is unavailable if several WAN connections are created).

Creating Dynamic IPv4 or Static IPv4 WAN Connection

On the connection creation page, in the **General Settings** section, select the relevant value from the **Connection type** drop-down list and specify the needed values.

General Settings
Connection type
Static IPv4
Interface
LAN2 -
Connection name*
statip_20
The number of characters should not exceed 32 Enable connection NAT
(i) The network address translation function. It is recommended not to disable unless your ISP requires it.
Ping
WAN Ping Respond allows the device to respond to ping requests from the external network.
RIP RIP

Figure 67. The page for creating a new Static IPv4 connection. The General Settings section.

Parameter	Description
	General Settings
Interface	A physical or virtual WAN interface to which the new connection will be assigned.
Connection name	A name for the connection for easier identification.
Enable connection	Move the switch to the right to enable the connection. Move the switch to the left to disable the connection.
NAT	If the switch is moved to the right, the network address translation function for IPv4 is enabled. Do not disable the function unless your ISP requires this.
Ping	If the switch is moved to the right, the router responds to ping requests from the external network through this connection. For security reasons, it is recommended to disable this function.
RIP	Move the switch to the right to allow using RIP for this connection.

Ether	net
MAC add	^{iress*} 30:EC:4E:9C
<u> </u>	Clone MAC address of your NIC (00:13:46:62:2F:4C)
	RESTORE DEFAULT MAC ADDRESS
MTU*	



Parameter	Description
	Ethernet
	A MAC address assigned to the interface. This parameter is mandatory if your ISP uses MAC address binding. In the field, enter the MAC address registered by your ISP upon concluding the agreement.
MAC address	To set the MAC address of the network interface card (of the computer that is being used to configure the router at the moment) as the MAC address of the WAN interface, move the Clone MAC address of your NIC switch to the right. When the switch is moved to the right, the field is unavailable for editing.
	To set the router's MAC address, click the RESTORE DEFAULT MAC ADDRESS button (the button is available when the switch is moved to the right).
MTU	The maximum size of units transmitted by the interface.

IPv4	
IP address*	
Subnet mask	*
Gateway IP a	ddress*
Primary DNS	*
Secondary D	NS
addressing is given	tion is created for the IPTV service only and no data on IP n by your ISP, then you can set the following values: IP address = = 255.255.255.252, Gateway IP address = 1.0.0.2, Primary DNS

Figure 69. The page for creating a new Static IPv4 connection. The IPv4 section.

Parameter	arameter Description	
	IPv4	
	For Static IPv4 type	
IP address	Enter an IP address for this WAN connection.	
Subnet mask	Enter a subnet mask for this WAN connection.	
Gateway IP address	ddress Enter an IP address of the gateway used by this WAN connection.	
Primary DNS /	Enter addresses of the primary and secondary DNS servers in the	
Secondary DNS	relevant fields.	
	For Dynamic IPv4 type	
Obtain DNS server addresses	Move the switch to the right to configure automatic assignment of DNS server addresses. Upon that the Primary DNS and	
automatically	DNS server addresses. Upon that the Primary DNS an Secondary DNS fields are not available for editing.	
Primary DNS /	Enter addresses of the primary and secondary DNS servers in the	
Secondary DNS	relevant fields.	
Vendor ID	The identifier of your ISP. Optional.	

User Manual

Parameter	Description
Hostname	A name of the router specified by your ISP. Optional.

When all needed settings are configured, click the **APPLY** button.

Creating Dynamic IPv6 or Static IPv6 WAN Connection

On the connection creation page, in the **General Settings** section, select the relevant value from the **Connection type** drop-down list and specify the needed values.

General Settings
Connection type
Static IPv6
Interface
LAN2 -
Connection name*
statipv6_86
(i) The number of characters should not exceed 32
C Enable connection
ΝΑΤν6
(i) The network address translation function. It is recommended not to disable unless your ISP requires it.
Ping
WAN Ping Respond allows the device to respond to ping requests from the external network.

Figure 70. The page for creating a new Static IPv6 connection. The General Settings section.

Parameter	Parameter Description			
	General Settings			
Interface	A physical or virtual WAN interface to which the new connection will be assigned.			
Connection name	A name for the connection for easier identification.			
Enable connection	Move the switch to the right to enable the connection. Move the switch to the left to disable the connection.			
NATv6	If the switch is moved to the right, the network address translation function for IPv6 is enabled. Do not disable the function unless your ISP requires this.			
Ping	If the switch is moved to the right, the router responds to ping requests from the external network through this connection. For security reasons, it is recommended to disable this function.			

Ethern	et
MAC addro EC:22:3	ess* 0:EC:4E:9C
	Clone MAC address of your NIC 00:13:46:62:2F:4C)
	RESTORE DEFAULT MAC ADDRESS
MTU*	
1500	



Parameter	Description
	Ethernet
	A MAC address assigned to the interface. This parameter is mandatory if your ISP uses MAC address binding. In the field, enter the MAC address registered by your ISP upon concluding the agreement.
MAC address	To set the MAC address of the network interface card (of the computer that is being used to configure the router at the moment) as the MAC address of the WAN interface, move the Clone MAC address of your NIC switch to the right. When the switch is moved to the right, the field is unavailable for editing.
	To set the router's MAC address, click the RESTORE DEFAULT MAC ADDRESS button (the button is available when the switch is moved to the right).
MTU	The maximum size of units transmitted by the interface.

IPv6			
IPv6 add	ress*		
Prefix*			
Gateway	IPv6 address*		
Primary	Pv6 DNS serve) r*	
Seconda	ry IPv6 DNS se	erver	

Figure 72. The page for creating a new **Static IPv6** connection. The **IPv6** section.

Parameter	Description	
	IPv6	
For Static IPv6 type		
IPv6 address	Enter an IPv6 address for this WAN connection.	
Prefix	The length of the subnet prefix. The value 64 is used usually.	
Gateway IPv6 address	Enter an IPv6 address of the gateway used by this WAN connection.	
Primary IPv6 DNS server / Secondary IPv6 DNS server	Enter addresses of the primary and secondary IPv6 DNS servers in the relevant fields.	
For Dynamic IPv6 type		
Get IPv6	Select a method for IPv6 address assignment from the drop-down list or leave the Automatically value.	

Parameter	Description
Enable prefix delegation	From the drop-down list, select the mode of a prefix request from a delegating DHCPv6 server to configure a range of IPv6 addresses for the local network.
	• None : The mode without prefix request.
	• Auto : The mode with the ability to request a prefix. When this value is selected, the router requests a prefix from a DHCPv6 server. Upon that obtaining a prefix is not mandatory to establish the connection.
	• Force : The mode with forced prefix request. When this value is selected, the router requests a prefix from a DHCPv6 server. Upon that obtaining a prefix is mandatory to establish the connection.
Obtain DNS server addresses automatically	Move the switch to the right to configure automatic assignment of IPv6 DNS server addresses. Upon that the Primary IPv6 DNS server and Secondary IPv6 DNS server fields are not available for editing.
Primary IPv6 DNS server / Secondary IPv6 DNS server	Enter addresses of the primary and secondary IPv6 DNS servers in the relevant fields.

When all needed settings are configured, click the **APPLY** button.

Creating PPPoE WAN Connection

On the connection creation page, in the **General Settings** section, select the relevant value from the **Connection type** drop-down list and specify the needed values.

General Settings
Connection type
PPPoE 🗸
Interface
LAN2 -
Connection name*
pppoe_57
Enable connection NAT
(i) The network address translation function. It is recommended not to disable unless your ISP requires it.
Ping
() WAN Ping Respond allows the device to respond to ping requests from the external network.
RIP RIP

Figure 73. The page for creating a new **PPPoE** connection. The **General Settings** section.

Parameter	Description
	General Settings
Interface	A physical or virtual WAN interface to which the new connection will be assigned.
Connection name	A name for the connection for easier identification.
Enable connection	Move the switch to the right to enable the connection. Move the switch to the left to disable the connection.
NAT	If the switch is moved to the right, the network address translation function for IPv4 is enabled. Do not disable the function unless your ISP requires this.
Ping	If the switch is moved to the right, the router responds to ping requests from the external network through this connection. For security reasons, it is recommended to disable this function.
RIP	Move the switch to the right to allow using RIP for this connection.

Etherne	ət
MAC addres	ss*):EC:4E:9C
<u> </u>	lone MAC address of your NIC 00:13:46:62:2F:4C)
	RESTORE DEFAULT MAC ADDRESS



Parameter	Description
	Ethernet
MAC address	A MAC address assigned to the interface. This parameter is mandatory if your ISP uses MAC address binding. In the field, enter the MAC address registered by your ISP upon concluding the agreement.
	To set the MAC address of the network interface card (of the computer that is being used to configure the router at the moment) as the MAC address of the WAN interface, move the Clone MAC address of your NIC switch to the right. When the switch is moved to the right, the field is unavailable for editing.
	To set the router's MAC address, click the RESTORE DEFAULT MAC ADDRESS button (the button is available when the switch is moved to the right).
MTU	The maximum size of units transmitted by the interface.

PPP	
Without authorization	
Username*	
Password*	ଜ
Service name	
мт∪• 1492	
Encryption protocol No encryption	Ŧ
Authentication protocol AUTO	•
Keep Alive	
LCP interval* 30	
LCP fails* 3	
Dial on demand	
Maximum idle time (in seconds)	ß
Static IP address	
PPP debug	

Figure 75. The page for creating a new **PPPoE** connection. The **PPP** section.

Parameter	Description
	PPP
Without authorization	Move the switch to the right if you don't need to enter a username and password to access the Internet.
Username	A username (login) to access the Internet.
Password	A password to access the Internet. Click the Show icon (\bigotimes) to display the entered password.
Service name	The name of the PPPoE authentication server.
MTU	The maximum size of units transmitted by the interface.

Parameter	Description
	Select a method of MPPE encryption.
	• No encryption : MPPE encryption is not applied.
	• MPPE 40 128 bit : MPPE encryption with a 40-bit or 128-bit key is applied.
Encryption protocol	• MPPE 40 bit : MPPE encryption with a 40-bit key is applied.
	• MPPE 128 bit : MPPE encryption with a 128-bit key is applied.
	MPPE encryption can be applied only if the MS-CHAP, MS-CHAPv2, or AUTO value is selected from the Authentication protocol drop-down list.
Authentication protocol	Select a required authentication method from the drop-down list or leave the AUTO value.
Keep Alive	If the switch is moved to the right, the router sends echo requests in order to check the connection state. After several consecutive unanswered requests the router restarts the PPP connection. If needed, change the interval (in seconds) between requests and the number of unanswered requests in the LCP interval and LCP fails fields correspondingly or leave the default values.
Dial on demand	Move the switch to the right if you want the router to establish connection to the Internet on demand. In the Maximum idle time field, specify a period of inactivity (in seconds) after which the connection should be terminated.
Static IP address	Fill in the field if you want to use a static IP address to access the Internet.
PPP debug	Move the switch to the right if you want to log all data on this PPP connection debugging. Upon that the Debugging messages value should be selected from the Level drop-down list on the System / Log page (see the <i>Log</i> section, page 329).

IPv4	
Obtain DNS server addresses automatically	
Primary DNS	R
Secondary DNS	A

Figure 76. The page for creating a new **PPPoE** connection. The **IPv4** section.

Parameter	Description
Obtain DNS server addresses automatically	Move the switch to the right to configure automatic assignment of DNS server addresses. Upon that the Primary DNS and Secondary DNS fields are not available for editing.
Primary DNS / Secondary DNS	Enter addresses of the primary and secondary DNS servers in the relevant fields.

When all needed settings are configured, click the **APPLY** button. In the simplified mode, after clicking the button, the window for creating an additional connection opens.

If your ISP offers access to local services (e.g. audio and video resources), click the **CREATE CONNECTION** button. On the page displayed, specify the parameters for the connection of the **Dynamic IPv4** or **Static IPv4** type and click the **APPLY** button.

If you do not need to create an additional connection, click the **SKIP** button. In this case, the **Connections Setup / WAN** page opens.

Creating PPTP, L2TP, L2TP Dual Stack, or L2TP over IPsec WAN Connection

On the connection creation page, in the **General Settings** section, select the relevant value from the **Connection type** drop-down list and specify the needed values.

General Settings
Connection type PPTP
Connection name* pptp_81
() The number of characters should not exceed 32
Enable connection
NAT
() The network address translation function. It is recommended not to disable unless your ISP requires it.
Ping
() WAN Ping Respond allows the device to respond to ping requests from the external network.

Figure 77. The page for creating a new **PPTP** connection. The **General Settings** section.

Parameter	Description
General Settings	
Connection name	A name for the connection for easier identification.
Enable connection	Move the switch to the right to enable the connection. Move the switch to the left to disable the connection.
NAT	If the switch is moved to the right, the network address translation function for IPv4 is enabled. Do not disable the function unless your ISP requires this.
NATv6	<i>For the</i> L2TP Dual Stack <i>type only.</i> If the switch is moved to the right, the network address translation function for IPv6 is enabled. Do not disable the function unless your ISP requires this.
Ping	For the PPTP , L2TP , and L2TP Dual Stack types only. If the switch is moved to the right, the router responds to ping requests from the external network through this connection. For security reasons, it is recommended to disable this function.

PPP	
Without authorization	
Username*	
Password*	8
VPN server address*	
MTU*	
1456	
Encryption protocol	
No encryption	•
Authentication protocol	
AUTO	-
Keep Alive	
LCP interval* 30	
LCP fails*	
Dial on demand	
Maximum idle time (in seconds)	ĥ
Maximum idle time (in seconds)	£
	a
Maximum idle time (in seconds) Static IP address	A

Figure 78. The page for creating a new **PPTP** connection. The **PPP** section.

Parameter	Description
PPP	
Without authorization	Move the switch to the right if you don't need to enter a username and password to access the Internet.
Username	A username (login) to access the Internet.
Password	A password to access the Internet. Click the Show icon (\bigotimes) to display the entered password.
VPN server address	The IP or URL address of the PPTP or L2TP authentication server.
MTU	The maximum size of units transmitted by the interface.

Parameter	Description
	Select a method of MPPE encryption.
	• No encryption : MPPE encryption is not applied.
	• MPPE 40 128 bit : MPPE encryption with a 40-bit or 128- bit key is applied.
Encryption protocol	• MPPE 40 bit : MPPE encryption with a 40-bit key is applied.
	• MPPE 128 bit : MPPE encryption with a 128-bit key is applied.
	MPPE encryption can be applied only if the MS-CHAP , MS-CHAPv2 , or AUTO value is selected from the Authentication protocol drop-down list.
Authentication protocol	Select a required authentication method from the drop-down list or leave the AUTO value.
Keep Alive	If the switch is moved to the right, the router sends echo requests in order to check the connection state. After several consecutive unanswered requests the router restarts the PPP connection. If needed, change the interval (in seconds) between requests and the number of unanswered requests in the LCP interval and LCP fails fields correspondingly or leave the default values.
	For the PPTP , L2TP , and L2TP over IPsec types only.
Dial on demand	Move the switch to the right if you want the router to establish connection to the Internet on demand. In the Maximum idle time field, specify a period of inactivity (in seconds) after which the connection should be terminated.
Static IP address	Fill in the field if you want to use a static IP address to access the Internet.
PPP debug	Move the switch to the right if you want to log all data on this PPP connection debugging. Upon that the Debugging messages value should be selected from the Level drop-down list on the System / Log page (see the <i>Log</i> section, page 329).

IPv4	
Obtain DNS server addresses automatically	(
Primary DNS	
Secondary DNS	

Figure 79. The page for creating a new **PPTP** connection. The **IPv4** section.

Parameter	Descript	tion
Obtain DNS server addresses automatically	Move the switch to the right to con DNS server addresses. Upon th Secondary DNS fields are not ava	nat the Primary DNS and
Primary DNS /	Enter addresses of the primary and	secondary DNS servers in the
Secondary DNS	relevant fields.	
	IPv6	
	Get IPv6 Automatically	-
	Enable prefix delegation Auto	•
	Obtain DNS server addresses automatically	
	Primary IPv6 DNS server	
	Secondary IPv6 DNS server	

Figure 80. The page for creating a new L2TP Dual Stack connection. The IPv6 section.

Parameter	Description
	IPv6 (for the L2TP Dual Stack type)
Get IPv6	Select a method for IPv6 address assignment from the drop-down list or leave the Automatically value.

Parameter	Description
	From the drop-down list, select the mode of a prefix request from delegating DHCPv6 server to configure a range of IPv6 addresse for the local network.
	• None : The mode without prefix request.
Enable prefix delegation	• Auto : The mode with the ability to request a prefix. When this value is selected, the router requests a prefix from a DHCPv6 server. Upon that obtaining a prefix is no mandatory to establish the connection.
	• Force : The mode with forced prefix request. When this value is selected, the router requests a prefix from a DHCPv6 server. Upon that obtaining a prefix is mandatory to establish the connection.
Obtain DNS server addresses automatically	Move the switch to the right to configure automatic assignment of IPv6 DNS server addresses. Upon that the Primary IPv6 DNS server and Secondary IPv6 DNS server fields are not available for editing.
Primary IPv6 DNS server / Secondary IPv6 DNS server	Enter addresses of the primary and secondary IPv6 DNS servers in the relevant fields.
	IPsec
	Pre-shared key* 💩
	Enable PFS
	Enable DPD
	DPD - Dead Peer Detection
	DPD delay (in seconds)* 30
	DPD timeout (in seconds)* 120
	Specify connection port

Figure 81. The page for creating a new L2TP over IPsec connection. The IPsec section.

Setting for both parties which establish the tunnel should be the same.

User Manual

Parameter	Description
	IPsec (for the L2TP over IPsec type)
Pre-shared key	A key for mutual authentication of the parties. Click the Show icon (\textcircled{Q}) to display the entered key.
Enable PFS	Move the switch to the right to enable the PFS option (<i>Perfect Forward Secrecy</i>). If the switch is moved to the right, a new encryption key exchange will be used upon establishing the IPsec tunnel. This option enhances the security level of data transfer, but increases the load on DVG-5402G/GF.
Enable DPD	Move the switch to the right to enable using DPD protocol for this tunnel. Such a setting allows to check the status of the remote host: if encrypted packets exchange between the router and the remote host breaks down, the router starts sending DPD messages to the remote host. If the switch is moved to to the left, the DPD delay and DPD timeout fields are not available for editing.
DPD delay	A time period (in seconds) between DPD messages. By default, the value 30 is specified.
DPD timeout	A waiting period for the response to a DPD message (in seconds). If the host does not answer in the specified time, the router breaks down the tunnel connection, updates information on it, and tries to reestablish the connection. By default, the value 120 is specified.
Specify connection port	Move the switch to the right to change the port used for data exchange with the other party enter the needed value in the Port field displayed. By default, the value 1701 is specified.

When all needed settings are configured, click the **APPLY** button.

After clicking the button, the window for additional configuration of the connection opens.

If you want to use this WAN connection to access the Internet, select the **to the Internet** choice of the radio button. Then select an existing connection which will be used to access the PPTP/L2TP server and click the **CONTINUE** button; or select the **create a new connection** choice of the radio button and click the **CREATE CONNECTION** button.

If you have already configured the connection to the Internet and you want to use this WAN connection only to connect to the virtual private network, select the **to the virtual private network** choice of the radio button and click the **CONTINUE** button.

After creating a connection of the L2TP over IPsec type, on the VPN / IPsec page, in the Status section, the current state of the IPsec tunnel is displayed.

Creating PPPoE IPv6 or PPPoE Dual Stack WAN Connection

On the connection creation page, in the **General Settings** section, select the relevant value from the **Connection type** drop-down list and specify the needed values.

Genera	al Settings
Connection	type
PPPoE	IPv6
Interface	
LAN2	•
Connection	name*
pppoev6	_7
The P	imber of characters should not exceed 32
0	mber of characters should not exceed 32
E	nable connection
• E	nable connection
	nable connection IATv6
	ΙΑΤν6
	IATv6 You can't use prefix delegation and NATv6
	IATv6 You can't use prefix delegation and NATv6 simultaneously
 N 1 1	IATv6 You can't use prefix delegation and NATv6
 N 1 1	IATv6 You can't use prefix delegation and NATv6 simultaneously twork address translation function. It is recommended not to disable
The neurons your	IATv6 You can't use prefix delegation and NATv6 simultaneously twork address translation function. It is recommended not to disable
The ne unless your	IATv6 You can't use prefix delegation and NATv6 simultaneously twork address translation function. It is recommended not to disable ISP requires it.

Figure 82. The page for creating a new **PPPoE IPv6** connection. The **General Settings** section.

Parameter	Description
General Settings	
Interface	A physical or virtual WAN interface to which the new connection will be assigned.
Connection name	A name for the connection for easier identification.
Enable connection	Move the switch to the right to enable the connection. Move the switch to the left to disable the connection.
NAT	<i>For the</i> PPPoE Dual Stack <i>type only.</i> If the switch is moved to the right, the network address translation function for IPv4 is enabled. Do not disable the function unless your ISP requires this.

Parameter	Description
NATv6	If the switch is moved to the right, the network address translation function for IPv6 is enabled. Do not disable the function unless your ISP requires this.
Ping	If the switch is moved to the right, the router responds to ping requests from the external network through this connection. For security reasons, it is recommended to disable this function.
RIP	<i>For the</i> PPPoE Dual Stack <i>type only.</i>Move the switch to the right to allow using RIP for this connection.
	Ethernet MAC address* EC:22:30:EC:4E:9C Clone MAC address of your NIC (00:13:46:62:2F:4C) RESTORE DEFAULT MAC ADDRESS MTU* 1500

Figure 83. The page for creating a new **PPPoE IPv6** connection. The **Ethernet** section.

Parameter	Description	
Ethernet		
MAC address	A MAC address assigned to the interface. This parameter is mandatory if your ISP uses MAC address binding. In the field, enter the MAC address registered by your ISP upon concluding the agreement.	
	To set the MAC address of the network interface card (of the computer that is being used to configure the router at the moment) as the MAC address of the WAN interface, move the Clone MAC address of your NIC switch to the right. When the switch is moved to the right, the field is unavailable for editing.	
	To set the router's MAC address, click the RESTORE DEFAULT MAC ADDRESS button (the button is available when the switch is moved to the right).	
MTU	The maximum size of units transmitted by the interface.	

PPP	
Without authorization	
Username*	
Password*	6
Service name	
MTU*	
1492	
Encryption protocol	
No encryption	•
Authentication protocol	
AUTO	•
Keep Alive	
LCP interval*	
30	
LCP fails*	
3	
Static IP address	
PPP debug	

Figure 84. The page for creating a new **PPPoE IPv6** connection. The **PPP** section.

Parameter	Description	
PPP		
Without authorization	Move the switch to the right if you don't need to enter a username and password to access the Internet.	
Username	A username (login) to access the Internet.	
Password	A password to access the Internet. Click the Show icon (\bigotimes) to display the entered password.	
Service name	The name of the PPPoE authentication server.	
MTU	The maximum size of units transmitted by the interface.	

Parameter	Description	
Encryption protocol	Select a method of MPPE encryption.	
	• No encryption : MPPE encryption is not applied.	
	• MPPE 40 128 bit : MPPE encryption with a 40-bit or 128-bit key is applied.	
	• MPPE 40 bit : MPPE encryption with a 40-bit key is applied.	
	• MPPE 128 bit : MPPE encryption with a 128-bit key is applied.	
	MPPE encryption can be applied only if the MS-CHAP, MS-CHAPv2, or AUTO value is selected from the Authentication protocol drop-down list.	
Authentication protocol	Select a required authentication method from the drop-down list or leave the AUTO value.	
Keep Alive	If the switch is moved to the right, the router sends echo requests in order to check the connection state. After several consecutive unanswered requests the router restarts the PPP connection. If needed, change the interval (in seconds) between requests and the number of unanswered requests in the LCP interval and LCP fails fields correspondingly or leave the default values.	
Static IP address	Fill in the field if you want to use a static IP address to access the Internet.	
PPP debug	Move the switch to the right if you want to log all data on this PPP connection debugging. Upon that the Debugging messages value should be selected from the Level drop-down list on the System / Log page (see the <i>Log</i> section, page 329).	

IPv4	
Obtain DNS server addresses automa	atically
Primary DNS	A
Secondary DNS	A

Figure 85. The page for creating a new **PPPoE Dual Stack** connection. The **IPv4** section.

Parameter	Descrip	tion
IPv4 (for the PPPoE Dual Stack type)		
Obtain DNS server addresses automatically	Move the switch to the right to configure automatic assignment of DNS server addresses. Upon that the Primary DNS and Secondary DNS fields are not available for editing.	
Primary DNS / Secondary DNS	Enter addresses of the primary and secondary DNS servers in the relevant fields.	
	IPv6	
	Get IPv6 Automatically	•
	Enable prefix delegation Auto	•
	Obtain DNS server addresses automatically	
	Primary IPv6 DNS server	
	Secondary IPv6 DNS server	

Figure 86. The page for creating a new **PPPoE Pv6** connection. The **IPv6** section.

Parameter	Description
IPv6	
Get IPv6Select a method for IPv6 address assignment from the drop-do list or leave the Automatically value.	

Parameter	Description	
Enable prefix delegation	From the drop-down list, select the mode of a prefix request from a delegating DHCPv6 server to configure a range of IPv6 addresses for the local network.	
	• None : The mode without prefix request.	
	• Auto : The mode with the ability to request a prefix. When this value is selected, the router requests a prefix from a DHCPv6 server. Upon that obtaining a prefix is not mandatory to establish the connection.	
	• Force : The mode with forced prefix request. When this value is selected, the router requests a prefix from a DHCPv6 server. Upon that obtaining a prefix is mandatory to establish the connection.	
Obtain DNS server addresses automatically	Move the switch to the right to configure automatic assignment of IPv6 DNS server addresses. Upon that the Primary IPv6 DNS server and Secondary IPv6 DNS server fields are not available for editing.	
Primary IPv6 DNS server / Secondary IPv6 DNS server	Enter addresses of the primary and secondary IPv6 DNS servers in the relevant fields.	

Creating Mobile Internet WAN Connection

If the PIN code check is enabled for the SIM card inserted into your USB modem, for correct operation of the mobile WAN connection click the **ENTER PIN** button in the notification in the top right corner of the page and enter the PIN code¹⁰ in the window displayed. Then on the connection creation page, in the **General Settings** section, select the relevant value from the **Connection type** drop-down list and specify the needed values.

General Settings
Connection type Mobile Internet
Connection name* mobileinet_38
() The number of characters should not exceed 32
Enable connection
Use as interface
() This option allows creating a network interface to connect clients to the modern through a transparent bridge. Attention! Only clients connected to the interfaces which are included into this transparent bridge will have access to the Internet. For further configuration, please go to the VLAN page
NAT
(i) The network address translation function. It is recommended not to disable unless your ISP requires it.
Ping
() WAN Ping Respond allows the device to respond to ping requests from the external network.

Figure 87. The page for creating a new Mobile Internet connection. The General Settings section.

Parameter	Description
	General Settings
Connection name	A name for the connection for easier identification.
Enable connection	Move the switch to the right to enable the connection. Move the switch to the left to disable the connection.
Use as interface	Move the switch to the right in order to create a network interface for this connection, for example, to combine several interfaces into a transparent connection.

¹⁰ Some models of USB modems do not support disabling the PIN code check on the SIM card through the web-based interface of the router.

Parameter	Description
NAT	If the switch is moved to the right, the network address translation function for IPv4 is enabled. Do not disable the function unless your ISP requires this.
	The switch is displayed when the IPv4 or Dual value is selected from the Type drop-down list in the Modem Settings section.
NATv6	If the switch is moved to the right, the network address translation function for IPv6 is enabled. Do not disable the function unless your ISP requires this.
	The switch is displayed when the IPv6 or Dual value is selected from the Type drop-down list in the Modem Settings section.
Ping	If the switch is moved to the right, the router responds to ping requests from the external network through this connection. For security reasons, it is recommended to disable this function.
	Modem Settings

MODE	M/SIM CARD SELECTION	
Mode		
Auto		•
APN		
Dial number		
*99#		
Without autho	rization	
Authentication protocol	rization	
	rization	ſ
Authentication protocol	rization	6

Figure 88. The page for creating a new Mobile Internet connection. The Modem Settings section.

User Manual

Parameter	Description	
Modem Settings		
MODEM/SIM CARD SELECTION	Click the button in order to assign the connection to one of connected USB modems. ¹¹	
Mode	The value of the field specifies the type of the network to which the router connects. Leave the Auto value to let the router connect automatically to an available type of network, or select a needed value from the drop-down list.	
APN	An access point name.	
Dial number	A number dialed to connect to the authorization server of the operator.	
Without authorization	Move the switch to the right if your operator does not require authorization.	
Authentication protocol	Select a required authentication method from the drop-down list.	
Username	A username (login) to connect to the network of the operator.	
Password	A password to connect to the network of the operator. Click the Show icon (\bigotimes) to display the entered password.	
Туре	An IP version which will be used by this connection. Select the IPv4 , IPv6 , or Dual value from the drop-down list.	

PPP	
MTU*	
1370	
	Keep Alive
LCP inter	rval*
30	
LCP fails	·
3	
	Dial on demand
Maxim	um idle time (in seconds)
	PPP debug

Figure 89. The page for creating a new **Mobile Internet** connection. The **PPP** section.

¹¹ When several devices are connected to one USB port of the router, it is recommended to use a self-powered USB hub.

Description Parameter PPP MTU The maximum size of units transmitted by the interface. If the switch is moved to the right, the router sends echo requests in order to check the connection state. After several consecutive unanswered requests the router restarts the PPP connection. If Keep Alive needed, change the interval (in seconds) between requests and the number of unanswered requests in the LCP interval and LCP fails fields correspondingly or leave the default values. Move the switch to the right if you want the router to establish connection to the Internet on demand. In the Maximum idle time Dial on demand field, specify a period of inactivity (in seconds) after which the connection should be terminated. Move the switch to the right if you want to log all data on this PPP connection debugging. Upon that the Debugging messages **PPP** debug value should be selected from the Level drop-down list on the System / Log page (see the *Log* section, page 329).

IPv4	
Obtain DNS server addresses automatically	
Primary DNS	
Secondary DNS	

Figure 90. The page for creating a new **Mobile Internet** connection. The **IPv4** section.

Parameter	Description
	IPv4 (for the Dual and IPv4 types)
Obtain DNS server addresses automatically	Move the switch to the right to configure automatic assignment of DNS server addresses. Upon that the Primary DNS and Secondary DNS fields are not available for editing.
Primary DNS / Secondary DNS	Enter addresses of the primary and secondary DNS servers in the relevant fields.

IPv6 Obtain DNS server addresses automatically	
Primary IPv6 DNS server	
Secondary IPv6 DNS server	

Figure 91. The page for creating a new Mobile Internet connection. The IPv6 section.

Parameter	Description	۱
	IPv6 (for the Dual and IPv6 types)	
Obtain DNS server addresses automatically	Move the switch to the right to config IPv6 DNS server addresses. Upon the server and Secondary IPv6 DNS set for editing.	at the Primary IPv6 DNS
Primary IPv6 DNS server / Secondary IPv6 DNS server	Enter addresses of the primary and sec the relevant fields.	ondary IPv6 DNS servers in
	Health Check	
	D Enable	
	Checking connection status using the ping command The maximum number of attempts	
	Timeout (in seconds)	
	① The maximum response time for one attempt	
	Connection restart	
	① The connection will be restarted after the number of attempts to check the destination host availability reaches the maximum value	
	Addresses () List is empty (Default 8.8.8.8)	

() When the IP address of the modern is changed, the request to update the IP address is sent to all actual connections

Modem IP address verification

ADD

Figure 92. The page for creating a new Mobile Internet connection. The Health Check section.

Parameter	Description
Health Check	
Enable	Move the switch to the right to check the connection health using the ICMP ping mechanism.
The maximum number	A number of requests to check the health of the connection. By default, the value 10 is specified.
of attempts	Several ping requests are sent to check the hosts. After several failed attempts the connection status is changed until a successful attempt is made.
Timeout	A time period (in seconds) allocated for a respond to one ping request. By default, the value 3 is specified.
Connection restart	Move the switch to the right to reestablish connection if the maximum number of ping requests fails.
	IP addresses from the external network that the router will check for availability via ICMP ping mechanism. By default, the router checks the IP address 8.8.8.8.
Addresses	Click the ADD button, and in the line displayed, enter an IP address or leave value suggested by the router. You can add several addresses.
	To remove an IP address from the list, click the Delete button
	$(\overline{\boxed{10}})$ in the line of the address.
Modem IP address verification	Move the switch to the right to let the router request the actual IP address from the modem in case modem's IP address changes before expiration of the previous one.

Creating IPIP6 WAN Connection

On the connection creation page, in the **General Settings** section, select the relevant value from the **Connection type** drop-down list and specify the needed values.

General Settings
Connection type IPIP6
Connection name* ipipv6_67
 The number of characters should not exceed 32 Enable connection
NAT NAT
The network address translation function. It is recommended not to disable unless your ISP requires it.
Ping
() WAN Ping Respond allows the device to respond to ping requests from the external network.

Figure 93. The page for creating a new **IPIP6** connection. The **General Settings** section.

Parameter	Description	
	General Settings	
Connection name	A name for the connection for easier identification.	
Enable connection	Move the switch to the right to enable the connection. Move the switch to the left to disable the connection.	
NAT	If the switch is moved to the right, the network address translation function for IPv4 is enabled. Do not disable the function unless your ISP requires this.	
Ping	If the switch is moved to the right, the router responds to ping requests from the external network through this connection. For security reasons, it is recommended to disable this function.	

IP	
Obtain remote host address au	tomatically
Remote host	G
Mode*	
DSLite	•

Figure 94. The page for creating a new IPIP6 connection. The IP section.

Parameter	Description
	IP
Obtain remote host address automatically	Move the switch to the right to configure automatic assignment of a remote host IPv6 address.
	Select an identification method for the remote host from the drop- down list:
Туре	• Address: The remote host is identified by its IPv6 address.
.,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	• FQDN : The remote host is identified by its domain name.
	The drop-down list is displayed if the Obtain remote host address automatically switch is moved to the left.
Remote host	Enter the remote host IPv6 address if the Address value is selected from the Type drop-down list.
	Enter the remote host domain name if the FQDN value is selected from the Type drop-down list.
	The field is available for editing, if the Obtain remote host address automatically switch is moved to the left.
Mada	An operation mode of the connection.
Mode	From the drop-down list, select the DSLite value.
Set MTH sutematically	Move the switch to the right to set the maximum size of units transmitted by the interface automatically.
Set MTU automatically	Move the switch to the left to specify this parameter manually. Upon that the MTU field is displayed.
MTU	The maximum size of units transmitted by the interface.

After clicking the button, the window for additional configuration of the connection opens.

If you want to use this WAN connection to access the Internet, select the **to the Internet** choice of the radio button. Then select an existing connection which will be used to access the VPN server or select the **create a new connection** choice of the radio button and click the **CONTINUE** button.

If you have already configured the connection to the Internet and you want to use this WAN connection only to connect to the virtual private network, select the **to the virtual private network** choice of the radio button. Then select an existing connection which will be used to access the VPN server or select the **create a new connection** choice of the radio button and click the **CONTINUE** button.

Creating 6in4 WAN Connection

Before configuring the connection, please first register on a tunnel broker's web site.

On the connection creation page, in the **General Settings** section, select the relevant value from the **Connection type** drop-down list and specify the needed values.

General Settings	Remote host*
Connection type	
6in4 🗸	
	Client IPv6 address*
Connection name*	
6in4_69	Server IPv6 address*
The number of characters should not exceed 32 Enable connection	(i) Enter the server and client IPv6 addresses received from the tunnel broker without specifying the prefix length (for example, 2001:0DB8::1)
Ping	Routed IPv6 network*
() WAN Ping Respond allows the device to respond to ping requests from the external network.	() Enter the IPv6 subnet which will be routed through the connection of 6in4 type without specifying the prefix length (for example, 2001:0DB8::)
	Set MTU automatically

Figure 95. The page for creating a new **6in4** connection.

Parameter	Description
	General Settings
Connection name	A name for the connection for easier identification.
Enable connection	Move the switch to the right to enable the connection. Move the switch to the left to disable the connection.
Ping	If the switch is moved to the right, the router responds to ping requests from the external network through this connection. For security reasons, it is recommended to disable this function.
Remote host	Enter the IPv4 address of the server provided by the tunnel broker.
Client IPv6 address	Enter the IPv6 address of the router provided by the tunnel broker (without specifying the prefix length).
Server IPv6 address	Enter the IPv6 address of the server provided by the tunnel broker (without specifying the prefix length).
Routed IPv6 network	Enter the address of the routed IPv6 subnet (without specifying the prefix length) provided by the tunnel broker.

User	Manual
------	--------

Parameter	Description
Set MTU automatically	Move the switch to the right to set the maximum size of units transmitted by the interface automatically. Move the switch to the left to specify this parameter manually. Upon that the MTU field is displayed.
МТО	The maximum size of units transmitted by the interface.

After clicking the button, the window for additional configuration of the connection opens.

To use this WAN connection to access the Internet, select the **to the Internet** choice of the radio button. Then select an existing connection which will be used to access the server or select the **create a new connection** choice of the radio button and click the **CONTINUE** button.

Creating 6to4 WAN Connection

On the connection creation page, in the **General Settings** section, select the relevant value from the **Connection type** drop-down list and specify the needed values.

General Settings	6to4 Relay Router	
Connection type		
6to4 •	Set MTU automatically	
Connection name*		
6to4_91		
The number of characters should not exceed 32		
Enable connection		
Ping		
() WAN Ping Respond allows the device to respond to ping requests from the external network.		

Figure 96. The page for creating a new 6to4 connection.

Parameter	Description
	General Settings
Connection name	A name for the connection for easier identification.
Enable connection	Move the switch to the right to enable the connection. Move the switch to the left to disable the connection.
Ping	If the switch is moved to the right, the router responds to ping requests from the external network through this connection. For security reasons, it is recommended to disable this function.
6to4 Relay Router	The IPv4 address of the gateway which is used to transfer IPv6 packets.
Set MTU automatically	Move the switch to the right to set the maximum size of units transmitted by the interface automatically.
	Move the switch to the left to specify this parameter manually. Upon that the MTU field is displayed.
МТО	The maximum size of units transmitted by the interface.

When all needed settings are configured, click the **APPLY** button.

After clicking the button, the window for additional configuration of the connection opens.

To use this WAN connection to access the Internet, select the **to the Internet** choice of the radio button. Then select an existing connection which will be used to access the server or select the **create a new connection** choice of the radio button and click the **CONTINUE** button.

Creating 6rd WAN Connection

On the connection creation page, in the **General Settings** section, select the relevant value from the **Connection type** drop-down list and specify the needed values.

General Settings	Obtain 6rd settings automatically	
Connection type 6rd	6rd Border Relay	6
Connection name* 6rd_56	6rd IPv6 prefix	A
The number of characters should not exceed 32	6rd IPv6 prefix length 32	8
Enable connection	IPv4 mask length	
Ping	0	6
WAN Ping Respond allows the device to respond to ping requests from the external network.	Hub and spoke	
	Set MTU automatically	

Figure 97. The page for creating a new **6rd** connection.

Parameter	Description
	General Settings
Connection name	A name for the connection for easier identification.
Enable connection	Move the switch to the right to enable the connection. Move the switch to the left to disable the connection.
Ping	If the switch is moved to the right, the router responds to ping requests from the external network through this connection. For security reasons, it is recommended to disable this function.
Obtain 6rd settings automatically	Move the switch to the right to let the router obtain 6rd domain settings automatically from the LAN DHCP server or from a delegating router. Upon that the 6rd Border Relay, 6rd IPv6 prefix, 6rd IPv6 prefix length, and IPv4 mask length fields are not available for editing.
6rd Border Relay	Enter the IPv4 address of the router provided by your ISP for the 6rd domain.
6rd IPv6 prefix	The IPv6 prefix for the 6rd domain provided by your ISP.

Parameter	Description
6rd IPv6 prefix length	The IPv6 prefix length for the 6rd domain (in bits) allocated by your ISP. By default, the value 32 is specified.
IPv4 mask length	The number of bits in the IPv4 address of the router in the 6rd domain.
Hub and spoke	Move the switch to the right to exchange traffic between clients through the main host of the network in the 6rd domain. Move the switch to the left to exchange traffic between clients without the main host of the network.
Set MTU automatically	Move the switch to the right to set the maximum size of units transmitted by the interface automatically. Move the switch to the left to specify this parameter manually.
	Upon that the MTU field is displayed.
МТО	The maximum size of units transmitted by the interface.

After clicking the button, the window for additional configuration of the connection opens.

To use this WAN connection to access the Internet, select the **to the Internet** choice of the radio button. Then select an existing connection which will be used to access the server or select the **create a new connection** choice of the radio button and click the **CONTINUE** button.

LAN

To configure the router's local interface, go to the **Connections Setup / LAN** page.

IPv4

Go to the **IPv4** tab to change the IPv4 address of the router, configure the built-in DHCP server, specify MAC address and IPv4 address pairs, or add own DNS records.

IP address*	
192.168.8.2	54
Mask*	
255.255.255	0.0
Hostname	
dlinkrouter.lo	ocal
Specify a do	omain name ending with .local. In order to access the web
U Specily a do	

Figure 98. Configuring the local interface. The IPv4 tab. The Local IP Address section.

Parameter	Description
	Local IP Address
	Available if the Access point, Repeater, or Client mode was selected in the Initial Configuration Wizard.
Mode of local IP	Select the needed value from the drop-down list.
	• Static : The IPv4 address, subnet mask, and the gateway IP address are assigned manually.
address assignment	• Dynamic : The router automatically obtains these parameters from the LAN DHCP server or from the router to which it connects. When this value is selected, the controls of the Dynamic IP Addresses section are not available. Also when this value is selected, the Obtain DNS server addresses automatically switch is displayed on the tab.

Parameter	Description
IP address	The IPv4 address of the router in the local subnet. By default, the following value is specified: 192.168.8.254 .
Mask	The mask of the local subnet. By default, the following value is specified: 255.255.0 .
	Available if the Access point, Repeater, or Client mode was selected in the Initial Configuration Wizard.
Gateway IP address	The gateway IPv4 address which is used by the router to connect to the Internet (e.g., for synchronizing the system time with an NTP server). <i>Optional</i> .
Hostname	The name of the device assigned to its IPv4 address in the local subnet.
Obtain DNS server	Available if the Access point, Repeater, or Client mode was selected in the Initial Configuration Wizard.
addresses automatically	Move the switch to the right to configure automatic assignment of DNS server IPv4 addresses. Upon that the DNS IP address field is not available for editing.
	Available if the Access point, Repeater, or Client mode was selected in the Initial Configuration Wizard.
	If needed, specify a DNS server IPv4 address for the selected mode of local IP address assignment.
DNS IP address	If you want to specify several DNS servers, click the ADD button, and in the line displayed, enter the IPv4 address.
	To remove the address, click the Delete button $(\overline{\square})$ in the line of the address.
	The DNS servers specified on this page will have higher priority than the servers specified on the Advanced / DNS page.

Dynamic IP Addresses
1ode of IPv4 address assignment
DHCP -
tart IP*
92.168.8.100
nd IP*
92.168.8.199
ELECT ADDRESS RANGE
ease time (in minutes)*
440
DNS relay
Assigns the LAN IP address of the device as the DNS server for connected lients.

Figure 99. Configuring the local interface. The **IPv4** tab. The **Dynamic IP Addresses** section.

Parameter	Description
	Dynamic IP Addresses
Mode of IPv4 address assignment	 An operating mode of the router's DHCP server. Disable: The router's DHCP server is disabled, clients' IP addresses are assigned manually. DHCP: The router assigns IP addresses to clients automatically in accordance with the specified parameters. When this value is selected, the Start IP, End IP, Lease time fields, the SELECT ADDRESS RANGE button, and the DNS relay switch are displayed on the tab. Also when this value is selected, the DHCP Options, Static IP Addresses, and Hosts sections are displayed on the tab.
	• Relay: An external DHCP server is used to assign IP addresses to clients. When this value is selected, the External DHCP server IP, Option 82 Circuit ID, Option 82 Remote ID, and Option 82 Subscriber ID fields are displayed on the tab. Available if the Router, WISP Repeater, or Mobile Internet mode was selected in the Initial Configuration Wizard.

Parameter	Description
Start IP	The start IP address of the address range used by the DHCP server to distribute IP addresses to clients.
End IP	The end IP address of the address range used by the DHCP server to distribute IP addresses to clients.
SELECT ADDRESS RANGE	Use the button to set one of the available IP address ranges. In the window displayed, select the needed range and click the SAVE button to automatically fill in the Start IP and End IP fields.
Lease time	The lifetime of IP addresses leased by the DHCP server. At the end of this period the leased IP address is revoked and can be distributed to another device, unless the previous device has confirmed the need to keep the address.
DNS relay	Move the switch to the right so that the devices connected to the router obtain the address of the router as the DNS server address.
	Move the switch to the left so that the devices connected to the router obtain the address transmitted by the ISP or specified on the Advanced / DNS page as the DNS server address.
	The IPv4 address of the external DHCP server which assigns IPv4 addresses to the router's clients.
External DHCP server IP	To specify several IPv4 addresses, click the ADD button, and in the line displayed, enter an IPv4 address.
	To remove the IPv4 address, click the Delete button $(\overline{\square})$ in the line of the address.
Option 82 Circuit ID Option 82 Remote ID Option 82 Subscriber ID	The value of the relevant field of DHCP option 82. Do not fill in the fields unless your ISP or the administrator of the external DHCP server provided these values.

In the **DHCP Options** section, you can change default values for some options of DHCP protocol (IP address, subnet mask, DNS servers) or specify additional parameters which the built-in DHCP server should send to clients to configure the local network.

```
DHCP Options +
No rule created for DHCP options
```

Figure 100. Configuring the local interface. The **IPv4** tab. The section for configuring DHCP options.

To do this, click the **ADD** button (+).

DHCP Options	×
Known DHCP options Select option	•
Options value	A
SAVE Force	

Figure 101. Configuring the local interface. The IPv4 tab. The window for configuring a DHCP option.

In the opened window, you can specify the following parameters:

Parameter	Description	
Known DHCP options	From the drop-down list, select an option which you want to configure.	
Options value	Specify the value for the selected option.	
Force	Move the switch to the right to let the DHCP server send the selected option regardless of the client's request. Move the switch to the left to let the DHCP server send the selected option only when the client requests it.	

After specifying the needed parameters, click the **SAVE** button.

To edit the parameters of an option, left-click the relevant line in the table. In the opened window, change the needed parameters and click the **SAVE** button.

To remove the value of an option, select the checkbox located to the left of the relevant line in the

table and click the **DELETE** button ($\overline{10}$). Then click the **APPLY** button.

In the **Static IP Addresses** section, you can specify MAC address and IPv4 address pairs (set a fixed IPv4 address in the local area network for a device with a certain MAC address). The router assigns IPv4 addresses in accordance with the specified pairs only when the DHCP server is enabled (in the **Dynamic IP Addresses** section, the **DHCP** value is selected from the **Mode of IPv4 address assignment** drop-down list).

Static IP Addresses +
In order to assign an IP address to a MAC address, select a device from the list of connected clients or add a new device

Figure 102. Configuring the local interface. The IPv4 tab. The section for creating MAC-IPv4 pairs.

To create a MAC-IPv4 pair, click the **ADD** button (+). In the opened window, fill in the **MAC** address field. You can choose a device connected to the router's LAN at the moment. To do this, select the relevant MAC address from the drop-down list (the field will be filled in automatically). Then in the **IP address** field, enter an IPv4 address which will be assigned to the device with the specified MAC address. In the **Hostname** field, specify a network name of the device for easier identification. To limit the time of the specified IPv4 address assignment, specify the required value in the **Lease time** field. Click the **SAVE** button.

To edit the settings for an existing MAC-IPv4 pair, left-click the relevant line in the table. In the opened window, change the needed parameters and click the **SAVE** button.

To remove a MAC-IPv4 pair, select the checkbox located to the left of the relevant line in the table

and click the **DELETE** button ($\overline{\blacksquare}$). Then click the **APPLY** button.

If needed, you can add your own address resource records. To do this, click the **ADD** button (+) in the **Hosts** section (*available if in the Dynamic IP Addresses section the DHCP value is selected from the Mode of IPv4 address assignment drop-down list*).

Add Host $ imes$
Name*
() The number of characters should not exceed 63
IP address
ADD
() In order to delete IP address just leave the field empty
SAVE

Figure 103. Configuring the local interface. The **IPv4** tab. The window for adding a DNS record.

In the **Name** field, specify the domain or domain name to which the specified IPv4 address will correspond. In the **IP address** field, specify a host from the internal or external network. You can choose a device connected to the router's LAN at the moment. To do this, select the relevant IPv4 address from the drop-down list (the field will be filled in automatically). To specify several IP addresses, click the **ADD** button. Click the **SAVE** button.

To edit an existing record, in the **Hosts** section, select the relevant line in the table. In the opened window, change the needed parameters and click the **SAVE** button.

To remove a record, in the Hosts section, select the checkbox located to the left of the relevant line

in the table and click the **DELETE** button (\blacksquare).

After completing the work with records, click the **APPLY** button.

IPv6

Go to the **IPv6** tab to change or add the IPv6 address of the router, configure IPv6 addresses assignment settings, specify MAC address and IPv6 address pairs, or add own DNS records.

Local IPv6 Address	
For example: fd00::1/64	
Enter IPv6 address, slash (/), and a decimal value equal to the si of the prefix in bits.	ize
ADD	
Hostname	
dlinkrouter.local	
Specify a domain name ending with .local. In order to access th web-based interface using the domain name, enter this name with a dot and slash at the end in the address bar of the web browser (for example, dlinkrouter.local./)	

Figure 104. Configuring the local interface. The **IPv6** tab. The **Local IPv6 Address** section.

To add an IPv6 address of the router, click the **ADD** button. In the line displayed, enter an IPv6 address and then a slash followed by a decimal value of the prefix length. To change an IPv6 address of the router, edit the corresponding line.

To remove an IPv6 address, click the **DELETE** ($\overline{\square}$) button in the corresponding line of the table. Then click the **APPLY** button.

Also you can specify the following parameters:

Parameter	Description	
Local IPv6 Address		
Gateway IPv6 address	Available if the Access point, Repeater, or Client mode was selected in the Initial Configuration Wizard.	
	The gateway IPv6 address which is used by the router to connect to the Internet (e.g., for synchronizing the system time with an NTP server). <i>Optional</i> .	
Hostname	The name of the device assigned to its IPv6 address in the local subnet.	

Parameter	Description
	Available if the Access point, Repeater, or Client mode was selected in the Initial Configuration Wizard.
	If needed, specify a DNS server IPv6 address.
DNS IP address	If you want to specify several DNS servers, click the ADD button, and in the line displayed, enter the IPv6 address.
	To remove the address, click the Delete button $(\overline{10})$ in the line of the address.
	The DNS servers specified on this page will have higher priority than the servers specified on the Advanced / DNS page.

In the **Dynamic IP Addresses** section, you can configure IPv6 addresses assignment settings.

Dynamic IP Addresses	
Mode of IPv6 address assignment Stateful	
Start IP* ::2	
End IP* ::64	
SELECT ADDRESS RANGE Lease time (in minutes)* 1440	
() Lease time will be chosen by ISP based on the delegated prefix life time.	
The default route for LAN clients	
DNS relay	
Assigns the LAN IP address of the device as the DNS server for connected clients.	

Figure 105. Configuring the local interface. The IPv6 tab. The Dynamic IP Addresses section.

Parameter	Description		
	Dynamic IP Addresses		
Mode of IPv6 address assignment	 Select the needed value from the drop-down list. Disable: Clients' IPv6 addresses are assigned manually. Stateless: Clients themselves configure IPv6 addresses using the prefix. Stateful: The built-in DHCPv6 server of the router allocates addresses from the range specified in the Start IP and End IP fields. Also when this value is selected, the Static IP Addresses and Hosts sections are displayed on the tab. Relay: An external DHCP server is used to assign IPv6 addresses to clients. When this value is selected, the External DHCP server IP field is displayed on the tab. Available if the Router, WISP Repeater, or Mobile Internet mode was selected in the Initial Configuration Wizard. 		
Start IP / End IP	The start and the end values for the latest hextet (16 bit) of the range of IPv6 addresses which the DHCPv6 server distributes to clients.		
SELECT ADDRESS RANGE	Use the button to set one of the available IP address ranges. In the window displayed, select the needed range and click the SAVE button to automatically fill in the Start IP and End IP fields.		
Lease time	The lifetime of IPv6 addresses provided to clients.		
The default route for LAN clients	Move the switch to the right to let the clients, that received IPv6 addresses or configured them using the prefix, use the router as the default IPv6 route.		
DNO velou	Move the switch to the right so that the devices connected to the router obtain the address of the router as the DNS server address.		
DNS relay	Move the switch to the left so that the devices connected to the router obtain the address transmitted by the ISP or specified on the Advanced / DNS page as the DNS server address.		
	The IPv6 address of the external DHCP server which assigns IPv6 addresses to the router's clients.		
External DHCP server IP	To specify several IPv6 addresses, click the ADD button, and in the line displayed, enter an IPv6 address.		
	To remove the IPv6 address, click the Delete button $(\overline{\square})$ in the line of the address.		

In the **Static IP Addresses** section, you can specify MAC address and IPv6 address pairs (set a fixed IPv6 address in the local area network for a device with a certain MAC address). The router assigns IPv6 addresses in accordance with the specified pairs only when the **Stateful** value is selected from the **Mode of IPv6 address assignment** drop-down list in the **Dynamic IP Addresses** section.

Static IP Addresses + In order to assign an IP address to a MAC address, select a device from the list of connected clients or add a new device

Figure 106. Configuring the local interface. The **IPv6** tab. The section for creating MAC-IPv6 pairs.

To create a MAC-IPv6 pair, click the **ADD** button (+). In the opened window, fill in the **MAC** address field. You can choose a device connected to the router's LAN at the moment. To do this, select the relevant MAC address from the drop-down list (the field will be filled in automatically). Then in the **IP address** field, enter an IPv6 address which will be assigned to the device with the specified MAC address. In the **Hostname** field, specify a network name of the device for easier identification. To limit the time of the specified IPv6 address assignment, specify the required value in the **Lease time** field. Click the **SAVE** button.

To edit the settings for an existing MAC-IPv6 pair, left-click the relevant line in the table. In the opened window, change the needed parameters and click the **SAVE** button.

To remove a MAC-IPv6 pair, select the checkbox located to the left of the relevant line in the table and click the **DELETE** button ($\boxed{10}$). Then click the **APPLY** button.

If needed, you can add your own address resource records. To do this, click the **ADD** button (+) in the **Hosts** section (*available if in the* **Dynamic IP Addresses** section the **Stateful** value is selected from the **Mode of IPv6 address assignment** drop-down list).

Add Host X
Name*
(i) The number of characters should not exceed 63
IP address
ADD
(i) In order to delete IP address just leave the field empty
SAVE

Figure 107. Configuring the local interface. The IPv6 tab. The window for adding a DNS record.

In the **Name** field, specify the domain or domain name to which the specified IPv6 address will correspond. In the **IP address** field, specify a host from the internal or external network. You can choose a device connected to the router's LAN at the moment. To do this, select the relevant IPv6 address from the drop-down list (the field will be filled in automatically). To specify several IP addresses, click the **ADD** button. Click the **SAVE** button.

To edit an existing record, in the **Hosts** section, select the relevant line in the table. In the opened window, change the needed parameters and click the **SAVE** button.

To remove a record, in the **Hosts** section, select the checkbox located to the left of the relevant line in the table and click the **DELETE** button ($\boxed{10}$).

After completing the work with records, click the **APPLY** button.

WAN Failover

On the **Connections Setup / WAN Failover** page, you can enable the WAN backup function, which provides you with uninterrupted access to the Internet. When your main connection breaks down, the router activates the backup connection; and when the main channel is recovered, the router switches to it and disconnects the reserve one.

🗮 < Summary		WAN Failover
		you with uninterrupted access to the Internet. When your main connection breaks en the main channel is recovered, the router switches to it and disconnects the
Connections IP	v4	Check with ping
The list of available co	onnections on order of priority.	Interval between checks (in seconds)*
Connection	Check with ping	30
dynip_5	On	Waiting for response (in seconds)* 1
pppoe_45	On	Number of attempts* 3
		() Number of ping requests to the specified hosts
		Hosts
		8.8.8 ×
		77.88.55.55 ×
		94.100.180.200 ×
		ADD HOST
APPLY		

Figure 108. The Connections Setup / WAN Failover page.

To activate the backup function, create several WAN connections. After that go to the **Connections Setup / WAN Failover** page, move the **Enable** switch to the right.

In the **Connections IPv4** section, the existing IPv4 connections are displayed in order of their priority. The first connection on the list serves as the main connection, the others are backup connections.

To change the priority of a connection, left-click the relevant line in the table.

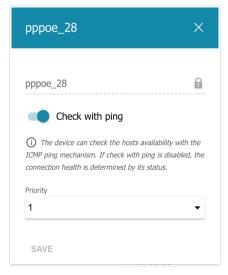


Figure 109. The window for changing the priority of a connection.

In the opened window, specify the needed parameters.

Parameter	Description
Check with ping	Move the switch to the right to let the router use ICMP ping mechanism for checking the connection.
	Move the switch to the left to let the router check only the status of the connection (may be useful for unstable connections).
Priority	The priority level of the connection. Level 1 is for the main connection, the others are backup connections. Select the required value from the drop-down list.

After specifying the needed parameters, click the **SAVE** button.

In the **Check with ping** section, specify settings of checking the connection using ICMP ping mechanism.

Parameter	Description
	Check with ping
Interval between checks	A time period (in seconds) between regular checks of the hosts' availability. By default, the value 30 is specified. The value of this field should be higher than product of Waiting for response and Number of attempts fields values.
	After a successful check the router keeps using the main connection. If the check fails, the router repeats it. After two failed checks the next operational connection from the list will be used as the default connection.
Waiting for response A time period (in seconds) allocated for a response to one request.	
Number of attempts A check is considered failed in case none of the sent ping receive a response.	
	External IP addresses that the router will check for availability via ICMP ping mechanism.
Hosts	Click the ADD HOST button, and in the line displayed, enter an IP address or leave values suggested by the router.
	To remove an IP address from the list, click the Delete icon (\times) in the line of the address.

When all needed settings are configured, click the **APPLY** button.

Auto Configuration of 3G/LTE

On the **Connections Setup / Auto Configuration of 3G/LTE** page, you can enable the function for automatic creation of a mobile WAN connection upon plugging a USB modem into the router.

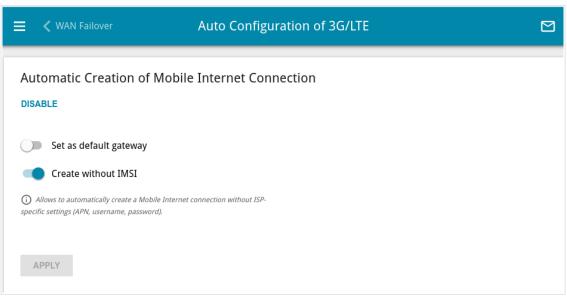


Figure 110. The Connections Setup / Auto Configuration of 3G/LTE page.

If you want to enable the function for automatic creation of a mobile WAN connection, click the **ENABLE** button. If needed, change the settings on this page.

Parameter	Description	
Set as default gateway	Move the switch to the right to allow the router to use an automatically created mobile WAN connection as the default connection.	
	Move the switch to the left if you want the router to continue using the existing default connection when automatically creating a mobile WAN connection.	
Create without IMSI	Move the switch to the right to enable automatic creation of a mobile WAN connection without the operator's settings. This setting will be useful if the code stored in the SIM card is unavailable.	
	Move the switch to the left to disable automatic creation of a mobile WAN connection without the operator's settings.	

After specifying the needed parameters, click the **APPLY** button.

If the PIN code check for the SIM card inserted into your USB modem is disabled, then an active WAN connection with the operator's settings will be automatically created when plugging the USB modem into the router. The connection will be displayed on the **Connections Setup / WAN** page.

If you want to disable the function for automatic creation of a mobile WAN connection, click the **DISABLE** button.

Traffic Balancing

On the **Connections Setup / Traffic balancing** page, you can enable the traffic balancing function. This function enables equal load balancing on the router and increases maximum bandwidth of your Internet connection while using several WAN connections (for example, if access to the Internet is provided by several ISPs).

😑 🔇 Summary	Traffic Balancing	
Traffic Balancing		
Connections List	+	
APPLY		

Figure 111. The Connections Setup / Traffic Balancing page.

To enable the traffic balancing function, move the **Enable** switch to the right. Then add connections to the page among which traffic will be balanced. To do this, click the **ADD** button

(+) in the **Connections List** section.

Connection	×
Connection* Not selected	-
Traffic adjustment Auto	-
SAVE	

Figure 112. The window for adding a new connection to the page.

In the opened window, specify the needed parameters.

Parameter	Description	
Connection	From the drop-down list, select a WAN connection to which traffic balancing will be applied.	
Traffic adjustment	Select a value from the drop-down list.	
	• Auto : Traffic is equally divided among connections with the same setting.	
	• Manual : Traffic is equally divided among connections in accordance with the value specified in the Weight field.	
Weight	Specify the percentage of traffic which will pass through the connection.	

After specifying the needed parameters, click the **SAVE** button.

To edit the setting for an added connection, in the **Connections List** section, select the relevant line in the table. In the opened window, change the value and click the **SAVE** button.

To remove a connection from the page, in the Connections List section, select the checkbox

located to the left of the relevant line of the table and click the **DELETE** button ($\overline{\square}$).

After specifying the needed parameters, click the **APPLY** button. Upon that the **Status** field is displayed on the page.

To disable the traffic balancing function, move the **Enable** switch to the left and click the **APPLY** button.

VPN

In this menu you can configure VPN connections based on IPsec/GRE/EoGRE/EoIP/IPIP protocols and create a PPTP or L2TP server and accounts for access to it.

IPsec

On the VPN / IPsec page, you can configure VPN tunnels based on IPsec protocol.

IPsec is a protocol suite for securing IP communications.

sec			
ou can configure VPN tunnels based or	Psec protocol.		
ISABLE			
ogging level			
2 i -			
Basic		•	
		• 	
unnels reconnect +		• 	
unnels reconnect + 🗊		Encryption/hashing algo	prithm
	Interface		orithm The Second Phase
unnels reconnect + 🗊	Interface	Encryption/hashing algo	
unnels reconnect + 🗊	Interface	Encryption/hashing algo	

Figure 113. The VPN / IPsec page.

To allow IPsec tunnels, click the **ENABLE** button. Upon that the **Tunnels** and **Status** sections and the **Logging level** drop-down list are displayed on the page.

In the **Status** section, the current state of an existing tunnel is displayed.

From the **Logging level** drop-down list, select a detail level of messages recorded to the system log or leave the value specified by default. The **Basic** value is recommended to establish an IPsec tunnel faster. To view the log, go to the **System / Log** page (see the *Log* section, page 329).

To create a new tunnel, click the **ADD** button (+) in the **Tunnels** section.

Setting for both devices which establish the tunnel should be the same.

C IPsec	IPsec/Adding			
General Settings				
Enable	Enable DPD			
Name*	i DPD - Dead Peer Detection	7		
ipsec_19	DPD delay (in seconds)*			
(i) The number of characters should not exceed 32	30			
IP version	DPD timeout (in seconds)*			
IPv4				
Dynamic IPsec	TCP MSS			
	Path MTU discovery			
Type Address	•			
Remote host*				
Remote identifier				
Remote port				
Pre-shared key*	Q			
Local WAN				
Default gateway	•			
Local identifier				
Local port				
NAT Traversal				
Enabled	•			
Mode				
TUNNEL	•			

Figure 114. The page for adding an IPsec tunnel. The **General Settings** section.

You can specify the following parameters:

Parameter	er Description			
	General Settings			
Enable	Move the switch to the right to enable the tunnel.			
	Move the switch to the left to disable the tunnel.			
Name	A name for the tunnel for easier identification. Use digits, Latin lette (uppercase and/or lowercase), and other characters available in the U keyboard layout. ¹²			
IP version	An IP version.			
Dynamic IPsec	Move the switch to the right to allow a remote host with any public II address to connect to the router via IPsec protocol. Such a setting can be specified for one IPsec tunnel only. Connection requests via this tunnel can be sent by a remote host only.			
	Select an identification method for the remote host (router) from the drop-down list:			
Туре	• Address: The remote host is identified by its IP address.			
	• FQDN : The remote host is identified by its domain name.			
	The drop-down list is displayed if the Dynamic IPsec switch is moved to the left.			
	Enter the remote subnet VPN gateway IP address if the Address value is selected from the Type drop-down list.			
Remote host	Enter the remote subnet VPN gateway domain name if the FQDN value is selected from the Type drop-down list.			
	The field is available for editing if the Dynamic IPsec switch is moved to the left.			
Remote identifier	A remote host identifier to establish connection over IPsec of particular hosts only. To establish connection, DVG-5402G remote identifier value should correspond to the local identifier v specified in the settings of the remote host. Use an IP address of a or subnet, the value %any (all IP addresses), a domain name certificate CN. By default, the value specified in the Remote h field is used.			

^{12 0-9,} A-Z, a-z, space, !"#\$%&'()*+,-./:;<=>?@[\]^_`{|}~.

Parameter	Description				
Remote port	A port of the remote host, that is used for IPsec packets exchange during the First Phase of the connection. If the field is left blank, port 500 is used. If the field is left blank and the network address translation (NAT) function is used for the connection, port 4500 is used.				
Pre-shared key	A PSK key for mutual authentication of the parties. Click the Show icon (\bigotimes) to display the entered key.				
	A WAN connection through which the tunnel will pass. Select a value from the drop-down list.				
Local WAN	• Interface : When this value is selected, the Interface drop- down list is displayed. Select an existing WAN connection from the list.				
	• Default gateway : When this value is selected, the router uses the default WAN connection.				
Local identifier	A local identifier of the router to establish connection over IPsec with particular hosts only. To establish connection, DVG-5402G/GF local identifier value should correspond to the remote identifier value specified in the settings of the remote host. Use an IP address, domain name, or certificate CN. <i>Optional</i> .				
Local port	A port of the router, that is used for IPsec packets exchange during the First Phase of the connection. If the field is left blank, port 500 is used. If the field is left blank and the network address translation (NAT) function is used for the connection, port 4500 is used.				
	The NAT Traversal function allows VPN traffic to pass through the NAT-enabled device. DVG-5402G/GF allows to forcibly encapsulate VPN traffic in UDP packets for passing through a remote device regardless of whether it supports address translation.				
NAT Traversal	If you need to enable forced encapsulation of VPN traffic, select the Enabled value.				

If you need to disable forced encapsulation of VPN traffic, select the **Disabled** value.

Parameter	Description				
	An operation mode of the IPsec tunnel. Select a value from the drop- down list.				
Mode	• TUNNEL : As a rule, it is used to create a secure connection to remote networks. In this mode, the source IP packet is fully encrypted and added to a new IP packet and data transfer is based on the header of the new IP packet.				
	• TRANSPORT : As a rule, it is used to encrypt data stream within one network. In this mode, only the content of the source IP packet is encrypted, its header remains unchanged and data transfer is based on the source header.				
Allow traffic from IPsec to router	Move the switch to the left to deny access to your router from the remote subnet via IPsec. The switch is displayed when the TUNNEL value is selected from the Mode drop-down list.				
Enable DPD	Move the switch to the right to enable using DPD protocol for this tunnel. Such a setting allows to check the status of the remote host: if encrypted packets exchange between the router and the remote host breaks down, the router starts sending DPD messages to the remote host. If the switch is moved to to the left, the DPD delay and DPD timeout fields are not available for editing.				
DPD delay	A time period (in seconds) between DPD messages. By default, the value 30 is specified.				
DPD timeout	A waiting period for the response to a DPD message (in seconds). If the host does not answer in the specified time, the router breaks down the tunnel connection, updates information on it, and tries to reestablish the connection. By default, the value 120 is specified.				
	<i>Maximum Segment Size of a TCP packet.</i> This parameter influences the size of a TCP packet which will be sent from the remote host to the router.				
TCP MSS	If the Manual value is selected, you can specify the value of this parameter for each subnet of the tunnel in the MTU field. The field is displayed in the window for adding a subnet in the Tunneled Networks section.				
	If the Path MTU discovery value is selected, the parameter will be configured automatically for all created subnets.				

User Manual

The First Phase	The Second Phase	
First phase encryption algorithm	Second phase encryption algorithm	
DES	✓ DES	•
Encryption mode	Encryption mode	
CBC	✓ CBC	•
Hashing algorithm	Hashing algorithm	
MD5	✓ MD5	•
Size of hash	Size of hash	
96	✓ 96	•
Hashing mode	Hashing mode	
HMAC	✓ HMAC	•
First phase DHgroup type	Enable PFS	
MODP768	• •	
	Second phase DHgroup type	
IKE-SA lifetime*	MODP768	•
10800		
	IPsec-SA lifetime*	
Aggressive Mode	3600	
IKE version		
1	▼	

Figure 115. The page for adding an IPsec tunnel. The First Phase / The Second Phase sections.

Parameter Description					
The First Phase					
First phase encryption algorithmSelect an available encryption algorithm from the drop-down list.					
Encryption mode Select an encryption mode from the drop-down list.					
Hashing algorithmSelect a hashing algorithm from the drop-down list.					
Size of hashThe length of the hash in bits.					
Hashing modeSelect a hashing mode from the drop-down list.					
First phase DHgroup type	• A Diffie-Hellman key group for the First Phase. Select a value from the drop-down list.				
IKE-SA lifetimeThe lifetime of IKE-SA keys in seconds. After the specified pe is required to renegotiate the keys. The value specified in this should be greater than the value specified in the IPsec-SA life field.					

Parameter	Description				
Aggressive Mode	Move the switch to the right to enable the aggressive mode for mutua authentication of the parties. Such a setting accelerates the connectio establishment, but reduces its security.				
IKE version	IKE (<i>Internet Key Exchange</i>) is a protocol of keys exchange between two hosts of VPN connections. Select a version of the protocol from the drop-down list.				
The Second Phase					
Second phase encryption algorithm	Select an available encryption algorithm from the drop-down list.				
Encryption mode	Select an encryption mode from the drop-down list.				
Hashing algorithm	Select a hashing algorithm from the drop-down list.				
Size of hash	The length of the hash in bits.				
Hashing mode	Select a hashing mode from the drop-down list.				
Enable PFS	Move the switch to the right to enable the PFS option (<i>Perj Forward Secrecy</i>). If the switch is moved to the right, a rencryption key exchange will be used for the Second Phase. To option enhances the security level of data transfer, but increases load on DVG-5402G/GF.				
Second phase DHgroup type	A Diffie-Hellman key group for the Second Phase. Select a value from the drop-down list. The drop-down list is available if the Enable PF switch is moved to the right.				
IPsec-SA lifetime	The lifetime of the Second Phase keys in seconds. After the specific period it is required to renegotiate the keys. The value specified in the field should be greater than zero.				

To specify IP addresses of local and remote subnets for this tunnel, click the **ADD** button (+) in the **Tunneled Networks** section.

Add Rule	×
Local network	
ADD SUBNET	
Specify the local subnet of IPsec tunnel (the router's LAN). Example: 192.168.0.0/24	
Remote subnet	
ADD SUBNET	LAN
() Specify the remote subnet of IPsec tunnel (the of the device which acts as a router). Example: 192.168.10.0/24	
of the device which acts as a router). Example:	

Figure 116. The page for adding an IPsec tunnel. The window for adding a tunneled network.

In the opened window, you can specify the following parameters:

Parameter	Description				
	A local subnet IP address and mask.				
Local network	To add one more subnet, click the ADD SUBNET button and enter the subnet address in the displayed line (available if 2 is selected from the IKE version list in the The First Phase section).				
	To remove the subnet, click the Delete icon (\times) in the line of the subnet address.				
	A remote subnet IP address and mask.				
Remote subnet	To add one more subnet, click the ADD SUBNET button and enter the subnet address in the displayed line (available if 2 is selected from the IKE version list in the The First Phase section).				
	To remove the subnet, click the Delete icon (\times) in the line of the subnet address.				
MTUThe maximum size (in bytes) of a non-fragmented packet. The displayed when the Manual value is selected from the TC drop-down list in the General Settings section.					

Click the **SAVE** button.

To edit fields in the **Tunneled Networks** section, select the relevant line in the table. In the opened window, change the needed parameters and click the **SAVE** button.

To remove a subnet, select the checkbox located to the left of the relevant line in the table and click

the **DELETE** button (1). Also you can remove a subnet in the editing window.

After configuring all needed settings for the IPsec tunnel, click the **APPLY** button.

To edit the parameters of an existing tunnel, in the **Tunnels** section, select the relevant tunnel in the table. On the opened page, change the needed parameters and click the **APPLY** button.

To disconnect an existing tunnel and establish it again, select the checkbox located to the left of the relevant line in the table and click the **RECONNECT** button.

To remove an existing tunnel, select the checkbox located to the left of the relevant line in the table

and click the **DELETE** button ($\boxed{10}$). Also you can remove a tunnel on the editing page.

To disable VPN tunnels based on IPsec protocol, click the **DISABLE** button.

GRE

On the VPN / GRE page, you can configure VPN tunnels based on GRE protocol.

GRE (*Generic Routing Encapsulation*) is a protocol for tunneling network packets, which enables you to create unprotected VPN tunnels.

≡ < IPsec	GRE	
GRE		
You can configure VPN tunnels	based on GRE protocol.	
No tunnel created You can add a tunnel	+	

Figure 117. The VPN / GRE page.

To create a new tunnel, click the **ADD** button (+).

	GRE/Adding	
Tunnel settings Tunnel settings Enable Name* GRE_59	Static route settings Remote LAN IP address*	
The number of characters should not exceed 32	Remote LAN mask*	
IP address*	Remote GRE interface subnet*	
Mask*	Remote GRE interface mask*	
Interface* Not selected	-	
Remote IP address*		
MTU* 1400		
Allow traffic GRE -> LAN		
APPLY		

Figure 118. The page for adding a GRE tunnel.

You can specify the following parameters:

Parameter Description					
Tunnel settings					
Enable	Move the switch to the right to enable the GRE tunnel.				
	Move the switch to the left to disable the GRE tunnel.				
Name	A name of the tunnel for easier identification. You can specify an name.				
IP address The IP address of the GRE tunnel interface.					
Mask The mask of the subnet.					
Interface	From the drop-down list, select a WAN connection through which the tunnel will pass. Select the Default gateway value to use the default WAN connection.				
Remote IP address	Enter the IP address of the remote subnet VPN gateway.				
MTU The maximum size of units transmitted from the remote he router.					
Allow traffic GRE \rightarrow LAN	Move the switch to the right to allow GRE tunnel users access devices in the remote local subnet.				
	Static route settings				
Remote LAN IP address	The IP address of the remote local subnet.				
Remote LAN mask	The mask of the remote local subnet.				
Remote GRE interface subnet	The subnet of the remote GRE interface.				
Remote GRE interface mask	The mask of the remote GRE interface.				

After configuring all needed settings, click the **APPLY** button.

To edit the parameters of an existing tunnel, in the **Tunnels** section, select the relevant tunnel in the table. On the opened page, change the needed parameters and click the **APPLY** button.

To remove an existing tunnel, select the checkbox located to the left of the relevant line in the table and click the **DELETE** button ($\boxed{10}$).

IPIP

On the VPN / IPIP page, you can configure VPN tunnels based on IPIP protocol.

IPIP (*IP Encapsulation within IP*) is a protocol for IP-tunneling network packets, which enables you to create unprotected VPN tunnels, encapsulating IP packets within other IP packets.

😑 < GRE		IPIP	
IPIP			
You can configure VPN tunnels	based on IPIP protocol.		
No tunnel created	+		
You can add a tunnel			

Figure 119. The VPN / IPIP page.

To create a new tunnel, click the **ADD** button (+).

≡ < IPIP	IPIP/Adding	
Tunnel settings • Enable Name* IPIP_63	Static route settings Remote LAN IP address*	
The number of characters should not exceed 32	Remote LAN mask*	
IP address*	Remote IPIP interface subnet*	
Mask*	Remote IPIP interface mask*	
Interface* Not selected	•	
Remote IP address*		
мт u* 1400		
Allow traffic IPIP -> LAN		
APPLY		

Figure 120. The page for adding an IPIP tunnel.

You can specify the following parameters:

Parameter	Description			
Tunnel settings				
Enable	Move the switch to the right to enable the IPIP tunnel.			
	Move the switch to the left to disable the IPIP tunnel.			
Name	A name of the tunnel for easier identification. You can specify any name.			
IP address	The IP address of the IPIP tunnel interface.			
Mask	The mask of the subnet.			
Interface	From the drop-down list, select a WAN connection through which the tunnel will pass. Select the Default gateway value to use the default WAN connection.			
Remote IP address	ress Enter the IP address of the remote subnet VPN gateway.			
MTU	The maximum size of units transmitted from the remote host to the router.			
Allow traffic IPIP \rightarrow LAN	Move the switch to the right to allow IPIP tunnel users access devices in the remote local subnet.			
	Static route settings			
Remote LAN IP address	The IP address of the remote local subnet.			
Remote LAN mask	The mask of the remote local subnet.			
Remote IPIP interface subnet	The subnet of the remote IPIP interface.			
Remote IPIP interface mask	The mask of the remote IPIP interface.			

After configuring all needed settings, click the **APPLY** button.

To edit the parameters of an existing tunnel, in the **Tunnels** section, select the relevant tunnel in the table. On the opened page, change the needed parameters and click the **APPLY** button.

To remove an existing tunnel, select the checkbox located to the left of the relevant line in the table and click the **DELETE** button ($\boxed{10}$).

PPTP/L2TP Servers

On the **VPN / PPTP/L2TP Servers** page, you can enable the PPTP or L2TP VPN server. To configure the PPTP or L2TP server, go to the relevant tab.

PPTP and L2TP help to establish a secure connection creating a tunnel in the standard insecure network.

Before creating the PPTP or L2TP server with authentication enabled, it is required to create user accounts (see the *VPN Users* section, page 161).

E 🗸 Summary PPTP/L	.2TP Servers	
РРТР	L2TP	
PPTP Server		
You can enable PPTP VPN server.		
Enable	Name* PPTP_Server_VPN_22	
VPN network	Access policies and NAT	
Server local IP address*	VPN <> LAN* Unknown	
Start client IP*	VPN <-> WAN* Unknown	
otart offert in		
End client IP*	VPN -> Router* Unknown	
	Giniowi	
Interface* Not selected	NAT VPN -> WAN	
	NAT VPN -> LAN	
Authentication		
Enable authentication	Advanced Settings	
	Maximum number of connections* 100	
MPPE	100	
Enable MPPE	MTU* 1400	
MPPE settings are available upon enabled authentication and require only	1400	
W mere settings are available upon enabled authentication and require only MSCHAP or MSCHAPv2.	Description Enable debug mode	
	DNS	
	Obtain DNS server addresses automatically	
	You can use addresses of the WAN connection selected from the 'Interface or specify them manually.	' lis
	Primary DNS	
	1.1.1.1	
	Secondary DNS	
	1.0.0.1	
Users List 🔶 🕂		

Figure 121. The VPN / PPTP/L2TP Servers page.

To enable the server, move the **Enable** switch to the right.

You can specify the following parameters:

Parameter	Description			
Name	A name of the server for easier identification. You can specify any name.			
	VPN network			
Server local IP address	The IP address of the VPN server.			
Start client IP	The start IP address of the address range for VPN server's clients.			
End client IP	The end IP address of the address range for VPN server's clients.			
Interface	Select a WAN connection through which this VPN server will be available. If the Default gateway value is selected, the router uses the default WAN connection.			
	Access policies and NAT			
VPN ↔ LAN	 Select a value from the drop-down list. Allow: VPN server's clients can access the router's local network; clients from the router's local network can access the VPN server's network. Deny: VPN server's clients cannot access the router's local network; clients from the router's local network cannot 			
VPN ↔ WAN	 access the VPN server's network. Select a value from the drop-down list. Allow: VPN server's clients can access the external network; clients from the external network can access the VPN server's network. Deny: VPN server's clients cannot access the external network; clients from the external network cannot access the VPN server's network. 			
VPN → Router	 Select a value from the drop-down list. Allow: VPN server's clients can access the router. Deny: VPN server's clients cannot access the router. 			
NAT VPN \rightarrow WAN	If the switch is moved to the right, the network address translation function between the VPN server's interface and the external network interface is enabled.			

Parameter	Description				
NAT VPN \rightarrow LAN	If the switch is moved to the right, the network address translation function between the VPN server's interface and the local network interface is enabled.				
	Authentication				
Enable authentication	Move the switch to the right to enable authentication. Upon that the Multiple sessions , CHAP , MSCHAP , MSCHAPv2 , and PAP lists are displayed on the page.				
	The mode of connection for the users listed in the Users List section. Select a value from the drop-down list.				
Multiple sessions	• Allow : Several users with the same user account are allowed to connect.				
	• Only new connections : If there are several users with the same user account, only new users are allowed to connect.				
	• Only old connections : If there are several users with the same user account, new users are not allowed to connect.				
	Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol.				
	Microsoft Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol.				
СНАР	Password Authentication Protocol.				
MSCHAP MSCHAD/2	Select the needed action from the drop-down list for the relevant protocol.				
MSCHAPv2 PAP	• Auto : Enable automatic client authentication over this protocol.				
	• Refuse : Disable client authentication over this protocol.				
	• Require : Require client authentication over this protocol.				
	MDDE				

MPPE

	Move the switch to the right to enable MPPE encryption.
Enable MPPE	MPPE encryption can be applied only if the Require value is selected from the MSCHAP or MSCHAPv2 drop-down list.

User Manual

Parameter	Description	
	MPPE encryption with a 40-bit or 128-bit key is applied. Select the needed action from the drop-down list.	
MPPE40	• Auto : Allow clients to connect to the VPN server automatically with MPPE encryption.	
MPPE128	• Refuse : Restrict clients from connecting to the VPN server with MPPE encryption.	
	• Require : Allow clients to connect to the VPN server only with MPPE encryption.	
	Advanced Settings	
Maximum number of	Available on the PPTP tab.	
connections	The maximum number of devices allowed to connect to the PPTP server.	
Port	Available on the L2TP tab.	
	The port of L2TP server. By default, the value 1701 is specified.	
MTU	The maximum size of units transmitted by the interface.	
Enable debug mode	Move the switch to the right if you want to log all data on this VPN server debugging. Upon that the Debugging messages value should be selected from the Level drop-down list on the System / Log page (see the <i>Log</i> section, page 329).	
	DNS	
Obtain DNS server addresses automatically	Move the switch to the right to let VPN server's clients obtain DNS server addresses of the WAN connection which is selected from the Interface list. Upon that the Primary DNS and Secondary DNS fields are not available for editing.	
Primary DNS/ Secondary DNS	Enter addresses of the primary and secondary DNS servers in the relevant fields.	

If you want to specify the list of accounts to provide access to this server, c	click the	ADD	(+)
button in the Users List section.			

User	×
User*	
Not selected	•
Set IP address	
Auto	•

Figure 122. A window for adding a user.

In the opened window, you can specify the following parameters:

Parameter	Description	
User	Select a user account to allow access.	
Set IP address	 The mode of IP address assignment. Select a value from the drop-down list. Auto: The IP address is assigned to the user automatically. Single IP: The IP address is assigned to the user manually. When this value is selected, the IP address field is displayed. 	
IP address	Specify an IP address from the range specified in the Start client IP and End client IP fields.	

Click the **SAVE** button.

To edit an existing user, in the **Users List** section, select the relevant line in the table. In the opened window, change the needed parameters and click the **SAVE** button.

To remove a user, in the **Users List** section, select the checkbox located to the left of the relevant line in the table and click the **DELETE** button ($\boxed{10}$).

After specifying the needed parameters, click the **APPLY** button.

To disable the server, move the **Enable** switch to the left and click the **APPLY** button.

VPN Users

On the **VPN / VPN Users** page, you can create user accounts to provide authorized access to a PPTP or L2TP server.

≡	PPTP/L2TP Servers	VPN Users	
	N Users can create user accounts to p	rovide authorized access to a PPTP or L2TP server.	
	ere are no users	+	

Figure 123. The VPN / VPN Users page.

To create a new user account, click the **ADD** button (+).

User	×
Username*	
Password*	Ø
SAVE	

Figure 124. The window for adding a user.

In the opened window, in the **Username** field, specify a username, and in the **Password** field – the password for the account. Use digits, Latin letters (uppercase and/or lowercase), and other characters available in the US keyboard layout.¹³ Click the **Show** icon (\bigotimes) to display the entered key.

Click the **SAVE** button.

To view passwords of all user accounts, move the **Show password** switch to the right.

To edit the parameters of an account, select the relevant line in the table. In the opened window, enter a new value in the relevant field, and then click the **SAVE** button.

To remove an account, select the checkbox located to the left of the relevant line in the table and click the **DELETE** button ($\boxed{10}$).

^{13 0-9,} A-Z, a-z, !"#\$%&'()*+,-./:;<=>?@[\]^_`{|}~.

EoGRE

On the **VPN / EoGRE** page, you can configure VPN tunnels based on EoGRE technology.

EoGRE (*Ethernet over GRE*) technology allows transferring traffic through VPN tunnels in heterogeneous networks, encapsulating Ethernet frames with the help of GRE protocol and transferring them over a network which uses a network protocol of another level.

≡ <	Summary	EoGRE	
	GRE can configure VPN tunnels based on EoGRE technology.		
	tunnel created +		

Figure 125. The VPN / EoGRE page.

To create a new tunnel, click the **ADD** button (+).

≡ < Eogre	EoGRE/Adding	
C Enable		
Enable creation of WAN connection		
Name*	Interface*	
EoGRE_29	Not selected	•
() The number of characters should not exceed 32	мт ∪* 1400	
Remote IP address*		
Tagged traffic		

Figure 126. The page for adding an EoGRE tunnel.

You can specify the following parameters:

Parameter	Description
Enable	Move the switch to the right to enable the EoGRE tunnel.
	Move the switch to the left to disable the EoGRE tunnel.
Enable creation of WAN connection	Move the switch to the right to use the EoGRE tunnel as an interface for creating a WAN connection. For further configuration, you need to create a VLAN which will include the EoGRE interface (see the <i>VLAN</i> section, page 224), and then create a WAN connection which will be assigned to the interface of this VLAN (see the <i>WAN</i> section, page 83).
	Move the switch to the left if creating a WAN connection is not required.
Name	A name of the tunnel for easier identification. You can specify any name.
Remote IP address	Enter the IP address of the remote subnet VPN gateway.
Tagged traffic	Move the switch to the right to assign a tag (VLAN ID) to EoGRE traffic and specify the needed value in the VLAN ID field displayed.
Interface	From the drop-down list, select a WAN connection through which the tunnel will pass. Select the Default gateway value to use the default WAN connection.
MTU	The maximum size of units transmitted by the interface.

After configuring all needed settings, click the **APPLY** button.

To edit the parameters of an existing tunnel, in the **Tunnels** section, select the relevant tunnel in the table. On the opened page, change the needed parameters and click the **APPLY** button.

To remove an existing tunnel, select the checkbox located to the left of the relevant line in the table and click the **DELETE** button ($\boxed{10}$).

VPN tunnels using EoGRE technology will appear in the **EoGRE interfaces** section on the **Advanced / VLAN** page and will be automatically removed from this section after the tunnel is deleted from the current page.

EoIP

On the **VPN / EoIP** page, you can configure VPN tunnels based on EoIP technology.

EoIP (*Ethernet over IP*) technology allows creating an Ethernet tunnel between two routers via connections which can transmit IP packets (e.g., IPIP, PPTP connections).

😑 < Summary	EoIP	
EoIP You can configure VPN tunnels	s based on EoIP technology.	
No tunnel created You can add a tunnel	+	

Figure 127. The VPN / EoIP page.

To create a new tunnel, click the **ADD** button (+).

	EoIP/Adding	
Enable Enable Enable creation of WAN connect	tion	
Name* EoIP_39	Interface* Not selected	•
Remote IP address*	MTU* 1400	
Tunnel ID*	C Keep Alive	
MAC address		
APPLY		

Figure 128. The page for adding an EoIP tunnel.

You can specify the following parameters:

Parameter	Description
Enable	Move the switch to the right to enable the EoIP tunnel.
	Move the switch to the left to disable the EoIP tunnel.
Enable creation of WAN connection	Move the switch to the right to use the EoIP tunnel as an interface for creating a WAN connection. For further configuration, you need to create a VLAN which will include the EoIP interface (see the <i>VLAN</i> section, page 224), and then create a WAN connection which will be assigned to the interface of this VLAN (see the <i>WAN</i> section, page 83).
	Move the switch to the left if creating a WAN connection is not required.
Name	A name of the tunnel for easier identification. You can specify any name.
Remote IP address	Enter the IP address of the remote subnet VPN gateway.
	Specify a unique identifier of the tunnel.
Tunnel ID	The value for both parties which establish the tunnel should be the same.
MAC address	A MAC address assigned to the EoIP tunnel interface. Optional.
	If the field is blank, the MAC address is assigned automatically.
Tagged traffic	Move the switch to the right to assign a tag (VLAN ID) to EoIP traffic and specify the needed value in the Tag ID field displayed.
Interface	From the drop-down list, select a WAN connection through which the tunnel will pass. Select the Default gateway value to use the default WAN connection.
MTU	The maximum size of units transmitted by the interface.
	Move the switch to the right to let the router detect the state of the tunnel on the other end. In the Interval and Attempts fields displayed, specify the required values.
Keep Alive	The router sends several check requests. If after several failed attempts the connection on the other end of the tunnel is inactive, the tunnel will be disabled. Upon that it will be enabled automatically when the other end tries to establish the connection.

Parameter	Description
Interval	A time period (in seconds) allocated for one request to check the state of the tunnel on the other end. By default, the value 5 is specified.
Attempts	A number of failed attempts to check the state of the tunnel on the other end after which the tunnel is disabled. By default, the value 5 is specified.

After configuring all needed settings, click the **APPLY** button.

To edit the parameters of an existing tunnel, in the **Tunnels** section, select the relevant tunnel in the table. On the opened page, change the needed parameters and click the **APPLY** button.

To remove an existing tunnel, select the checkbox located to the left of the relevant line in the table and click the **DELETE** button ($\boxed{10}$).

VPN tunnels using EoIP technology will appear in the **EoIP interfaces** section on the **Advanced / VLAN** page and will be automatically removed from this section after the tunnel is deleted from the current page.

Wi-Fi

In this menu you can specify all needed settings for your wireless network.

Basic Settings

In the **Wi-Fi / Basic Settings** section, you can change basic parameters for the wireless interface of the router and configure the basic and additional wireless networks. To configure the 2.4GHz band or 5GHz band, go to the relevant tab.

≡	🗸 Summary	Basic Settings	
	2.4 GHz	5 GHz	
Ba	sic Settings		
You	can change basic parameters for the wireless interface	e of the device.	
	🔵 Enable Wireless 🕓	Wi-Fi Network	
Cou	ntry	Network name (SSID)*	
	ISSIAN FEDERATION	DVG-XXX	
Wire	less mode	(i) The number of characters should not exceed 32	
80	2.11 B/G/N mixed	Hide SSID	
	Select channel automatically	Wireless network name (SSID) will not appear in the list of the second secon	
í	The least loaded data transfer channel will be used	wireless networks with customers. Go to a hidden network manually specify the SSID of the access point	, you can connect to
	Enable additional channels	BSSID	
-	-	74:da:da:00:54:12	a
~	Attention! The device automatically selects a channel from the li lable channels depending on your country. Make sure that your		
devi	ces support channels above 12	0	
Cha	nel		
aut	o (channel 3)	Enable shaping	
\bigcirc	Enable periodic scanning	Broadcast wireless network 🕓	
\sim	The device will periodically check the channels load and switch i ed one	to the least (i) Allows you to enable/disable broadcast of this SSID with the wireless module of the router. Can be used with the module of the router.	
Scar	ning period (in seconds)	Clients isolation	
0		Block traffic between devices connected to the access	point

Figure 129. Basic settings of the wireless LAN in the 2.4GHz band.

Parameter Description	
	To enable Wi-Fi connection, move the switch to the right.
	To disable Wi-Fi connection, move the switch to the left.
	To enable/disable Wi-Fi connection on a schedule, click the Set schedule icon ((). In the opened window, from the Rule drop- down list, select the Create rule value to create a new schedule
	(see the <i>Schedule</i> section, page 324) or select the Select an existing one value to use the existing one. Existing schedules are displayed in the Rule name drop-down list.
Enable Wireless	To enable Wi-Fi connection at the time specified in the schedule and disable it at the other time, select the Enable wireless connection value from the Action drop-down list and click the SAVE button.
	To disable Wi-Fi connection at the time specified in the schedule and enable it at the other time, select the Disable wireless connection value from the Action drop-down list and click the SAVE button.
	To change or delete the schedule, click the Edit schedule icon
	((). In the opened window, change the parameters and click the SAVE button or click the DELETE FROM SCHEDULE button.
Country	The country you are in. Select a value from the drop-down list.
Wireless mode	Operating mode of the wireless network of the router. This parameter defines standards of the devices that will be able to use your wireless network. Select a value from the drop-down list.
Select channel automatically	Move the switch to the right to let the router itself choose the channel with the least interference.
Enable additional channels	If the switch is moved to the left, the device automatically selects one of available standard channels. To use additional channels (the 12th and 13th – in the 2.4 GHz band, the 100th and higher – in the 5 GHz band), move the switch to the right.

In the **Basic Settings** section, the following parameters are available:

User Manual

Parameter	Description	
	The wireless channel number.	
Channel	To select a channel manually, left-click; in the opened window, select a channel and click the SAVE button. The action is available, when the Select channel automatically switch is moved to the left.	
	To make the router select the currently least loaded channel, click	
	the Refresh icon (\mathbf{C}). The icon is displayed, when the Select channel automatically switch is moved to the right.	
Enable periodic scanningMove the switch to the right to let the router search channel in certain periods of time. When the switch is n right, the Scanning period field is available for editing		
Scanning period	Specify a period of time (in seconds) after which the router rescans channels.	

When you have configured the parameters, click the $\ensuremath{\mathsf{APPLY}}$ button.

To edit the settings of the basic wireless network, in the **Wi-Fi Network** section, change the needed parameters and click the **APPLY** button.

Also you can create an additional wireless network. To do this, click the **ADD WI-FI NETWORK** button. On the opened page, specify the relevant parameters.

Add Wi-F	ï Network	C
Wi-Fi Network	Security Settings	
letwork name (SSID)*	Network authentication	
DVG-XXX.2	WPA2-PSK	•
The number of characters should not exceed 32	Password PSK*	
Hide SSID		Ø
 Wireless network name (SSID) will not appear in the list of available 	Password should be between 8 and 63 ASCII characters	
vireless networks with customers. Go to a hidden network, you can connect to	Encryption type*	
nanually specify the SSID of the access point	AES	•
Jax associated clients*		
)	Group key update interval (in seconds)*	
	3600	
Enable shaping	802.11w (Protected Management Frames)	
Broadcast wireless network	Disabled	•
Allows you to enable/disable broadcast of this SSID without disconnecting the wireless module of the router. Can be used with the mode "Wi-Fi Client"		
Clients isolation		
Block traffic between devices connected to the access point		
Enable guest network		
Enable the guest network in order to isolate Wi-Fi clients from the LAN network		
APPLY		

Figure 130. Creating a wireless network.

Parameter Description	
Wi-Fi Network	
Network name (SSID) A name for the wireless network.	
Hide SSIDIf the switch is moved to the right, other users cannot see your W network. It is recommended not to hide the network in order simplify initial configuration of the wireless network.	

Parameter	Description
BSSID	The unique identifier for this wireless network. You cannot change the value of this parameter, it is determined in the device's internal settings. The field is displayed in the settings of the existing wireless network.
Max associated clients	The maximum number of devices connected to the wireless network. When the value 0 is specified, the device does not limit the number of connected clients.
Enable shaping	Move the switch to the right to limit the maximum bandwidth of the wireless network. In the Shaping field displayed, specify the maximum value of speed (Mbps).
	Move the switch to the left not to limit the maximum bandwidth.
	If the wireless network broadcasting is disabled, devices cannot connect to the wireless network. Upon that DVG-5402G/GF can connect to another access point as a wireless client.
	To enable/disable broadcasting on a schedule, click the Set
	schedule icon ((). In the opened window, from the Rule drop-
Broadcast wireless network	down list, select the Create rule value to create a new schedule (see the <i>Schedule</i> section, page 324) or select the Select an existing one value to use the existing one. Existing schedules are displayed in the Rule name drop-down list.
	To enable broadcasting at the time specified in the schedule and disable it at the other time, select the Enable wireless network broadcasting value from the Action drop-down list and click the SAVE button. When the wireless connection is disabled, the device will not be able to enable broadcasting of this wireless network on schedule.
	To disable broadcasting at the time specified in the schedule and enable it at the other time, select the Disable wireless network broadcasting value from the Action drop-down list and click the SAVE button.
	To change or delete the schedule, click the Edit schedule icon
	(\textcircled{O}). In the opened window, change the parameters and click the SAVE button or click the DELETE FROM SCHEDULE button.
	If you created an additional network, you can configure, change or delete a schedule for each network. To do this, click the icon in the line of the network.

Parameter	Description
Clients isolation	Move the switch to the right to forbid wireless clients of this wireless network to communicate to each other.
Enable guest network	This function is available for the additional network. Move the switch to the right if you want the devices connected to the additional network to be isolated from the devices and resources of

In the **Security Settings** section, you can change security settings of the wireless network.

the router's LAN.

By default, the **WPA2-PSK** network authentication type of both bands of the wireless network is specified. WPS PIN from the barcode label is used as the network key.

Security Settings	
WPA2-PSK	•
Open WEP WPA WPA-PSK WPA2 WPA2-PSK	
WPA/WPA2 mixed WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK mixed WPA3-SAE WPA2-PSK/WPA3-SAE mixed	
Group key update interval (in seconds)* 3600	

Figure 131. Network authentication types supported by the router.

The router supports the following authentication types:

Authentication type	Description
Open	Open authentication (with WEP encryption for wireless network modes not supporting 802.11n or 802.11ac devices).
WEP	Authentication with a shared key with WEP encryption. This authentication type is not available when a mode supporting 802.11n or 802.11ac devices is selected from the Wireless mode drop-down list on the Wi-Fi / Basic Settings page.
WPA	WPA-based authentication using a RADIUS server.
WPA-PSK	WPA-based authentication using a PSK.
WPA2	WPA2-based authentication using a RADIUS server.
WPA2-PSK	WPA2-based authentication using a PSK.

Authentication type	Description
WPA/WPA2 mixed	A mixed type of authentication. When this value is selected, devices using the WPA authentication type and devices using the WPA2 authentication type can connect to the wireless network.
WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK mixed	A mixed type of authentication. When this value is selected, devices using the WPA-PSK authentication type and devices using the WPA2-PSK authentication type can connect to the wireless network.
WPA3-SAE	WPA3-based authentication using a PSK and SAE method.
WPA2-PSK/WPA3-SAE mixed	A mixed type of authentication. When this value is selected, devices using the WPA2-PSK authentication type and devices using the WPA3-SAE authentication type can connect to the wireless network.
The WPA, WPA2, server.	and WPA/WPA2 mixed authentication types require a RADIUS

When the **Open** or **WEP** value is selected, the following settings are displayed on the page (unavailable for the wireless network operating modes which support the standard 802.11n or 802.11ac):

Open	
Enable encryption WEP	
Default key ID 1	
It is recommended to use the first key by de with many devices.	efault to ensure compatibility
Encryption key WEP as HEX	K
 Encryption key WEP as HEX Length of WEP key should be 5 or 13 chara 	
 Length of WEP key should be 5 or 13 chara 	acters.
 Length of WEP key should be 5 or 13 chara 	acters.
Length of WEP key should be 5 or 13 chara Encryption key 1*	acters.
Length of WEP key should be 5 or 13 chara Encryption key 1*	acters.
Length of WEP key should be 5 or 13 chara Encryption key 1* Encryption key 2*	acters.

Figure 132. The **Open** value is selected from the **Network authentication** drop-down list.

Parameter	Description
	For Open authentication type only.
Enable encryption WEP	To activate WEP encryption, move the switch to the right. Upon that the Default key ID drop-down list, the Encryption key WEP as HEX switch, and four Encryption key fields are displayed on the page.
Default key ID	The number of the key (from first to fourth) which will be used for WEP encryption.
Encryption key WEP as HEX	Move the switch to the right to set a hexadecimal number as a key for encryption.
Encryption key (1-4)	Keys for WEP encryption. The router uses the key selected from the Default key ID drop-down list. It is required to specify all the fields. Click the Show icon () to display the entered key.

When the WPA-PSK, WPA2-PSK, WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK mixed, WPA3-SAE, or WPA2-PSK/WPA3-SAE mixed value is selected, the following fields are displayed on the page:

Security Settings	
Network authentication	
WPA2-PSK	•
Password PSK*	
	Ø
D Password should be between 8 and 63 ASCII characters	
Encryption type*	
AES	•
Group key update interval (in seconds)*	
3600	
802.11w (Protected Management Frames)	

Figure 133. The **WPA2-PSK** value is selected from the **Network authentication** drop-down list.

Parameter	Description
Password PSK	A password for WPA encryption. The password can contain digits, Latin letters (uppercase and/or lowercase), and other characters available in the US keyboard layout. ¹⁴ Click the Show icon (🐼) to display the entered password.
Encryption type	An encryption method: TKIP , AES , or TKIP + AES . TKIP and TKIP + AES encryption types are not available for WPA3-SAE and WPA2-PSK/WPA3-SAE mixed authentication types.
Group key update interval	The time period (in seconds), at the end of which a new key for WPA encryption is generated. When the value 0 is specified for this field, the key is not renewed.

^{14 0-9,} A-Z, a-z, space, !"#\$%&'()*+,-./:;<=>?@[\]^_`{|}~.

Parameter	Description
802.11w (Protected Management Frames)	For WPA2-PSK, WPA3-SAE, and WPA2-PSK/WPA3-SAE mixed authentication types only.
	Protected Management Frames help to improve packet privacy protection for wireless data transmission. Select a value for the wireless network from the drop-down list.
	• Disabled : Protected Management Frames are not used.
	• Optional : Protected Management Frames are optional.
	• Required : Protected Management Frames are required. When this value is selected, devices not supporting the 802.11w standard cannot connect to the wireless network.
	The default value cannot be changed for WPA3-SAE and WPA2-PSK/WPA3-SAE mixed authentication types.

When the **WPA**, **WPA2**, or **WPA/WPA2 mixed** value is selected, the following settings are displayed on the page:

Secu	rity Settings
Network	authentication
WPA2	•
	WPA2 Pre-authentication
IP addres	ss RADIUS server*
192.16	8.0.254
RADIUS	server port*
1812	server por
RADIUS	encryption key*
dlink	
Encryptic	n type*
AES	•
Group ke	y update interval (in seconds)*
3600	A oborro uno var (III appointa)
802.11w	(Protected Management Frames)
Disabl	ed 🗸

Figure 134. The WPA2 value is selected from the Network authentication drop-down list.

Parameter	Description
WPA2 Pre- authentication	Move the switch to the right to activate preliminary authentication (displayed only for the WPA2 and WPA/WPA2 mixed authentication types).

Parameter	Description		
IP address RADIUS server	The IP address of the RADIUS server.		
RADIUS server port	A port of the RADIUS server.		
RADIUS encryption key	The password which the router uses for communication with the RADIUS server (the value of this parameter is specified in the RADIUS server settings).		
Encryption type	An encryption method: TKIP , AES , or TKIP+AES .		
Group key update interval	The time period (in seconds), at the end of which a new key for WPA encryption is generated. When the value 0 is specified for this field, the key is not renewed.		
802.11w (Protected Management Frames)	 For WPA2 authentication type only. Protected Management Frames help to improve packet private protection for wireless data transmission. Select a value for the wireless network from the drop-down list. Disabled: Protected Management Frames are not used. Optional: Protected Management Frames are optional. Required: Protected Management Frames are required When this value is selected, devices not supporting the 802.11w standard cannot connect to the wireless network. 		

When you have configured the parameters, click the **APPLY** button.

To edit the basic or additional wireless network, left-click the relevant line in the table. On the opened page, change the needed parameters and click the **APPLY** button.

To remove the additional network, select the checkbox located to the left of the relevant line in the table and click the **DELETE** button ($\boxed{10}$). Then click the **APPLY** button.

Client Management

On the **Wi-Fi** / **Client Management** page, you can view the list of wireless clients connected to the router.

😑 🔇 Configuratio	'n	Client M	anagement		٥	7
Client Management You can view the list of wireless clients connected to the router.						
List of Wi-Fi Clie	ents REFRESH	DISCONNECT				
Hostname	MAC address	Band	Network name (SSID)	Signal level	Online	
-	50:8F:4C:E3:9E:50	5 GHz	DVG-XXX-5G	? 66%	0 min	

Figure 135. The page for managing the wireless clients.

If you want to disconnect a wireless device from your WLAN, select the checkbox in the line containing the MAC address of this device and click the **DISCONNECT** button.

To view the latest data on the devices connected to the WLAN, click the **REFRESH** button.

To view the latest data on a connected device, left-click the line containing the MAC address of this device.

WPS

On the **Wi-Fi / WPS** page, you can enable the function for configuration of the WLAN and select a method for connection to the WLAN.

The WPS function helps to configure the protected wireless network automatically. Devices connecting to the wireless network via the WPS function must support the WPS function.

The WPS function allows adding devices only to the basic wireless network of the router.

Before using the function you need to configure one of the following authentication types:

Open with no encryption, WPA2-PSK or WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK mixed with the

AES encryption method. When other security settings are specified, controls of the **WPS** page on the tab of the relevant band are not available.

	ips 🖸
2.4 GHz	5 GHz
WPS The WPS function helps to automatically connect to the wire support this function. DISABLE WPS	eless network of the router. The connecting devices must
WPS Control	Information
	WPS state: Configured
ESTABLISH CONNECTION	Default PIN code: 45654565
~	Network name (SSID): DVG-XXX
Enable WPS function with hardware button	Network authentication: WPA2-PSK
O Move the switch to the left in order to forbid enabling the WPS function with the relevant hardware button	Encryption: AES
,	Password PSK: 45654565
	UPDATE

Figure 136. The page for configuring the WPS function.

You can activate the WPS function via the web-based interface or the hardware **WPS** button on the cover of the device.

To activate the WPS function via the hardware button, move the **Enable WPS function with** hardware button switch to the right on the tabs of both bands. Then, with the device turned on, press the **WPS** button, hold it for 2 seconds, and release. The **WPS** LED should start blinking. In addition, upon pressing the button, the wireless interfaces of the device are enabled if they were disabled before.

If you want to disable activating the WPS function via the hardware button, on the tabs of both bands, move the **Enable WPS function with hardware button** switch to the left and make sure that the WPS function is not activated via the web-based interface.

To activate the WPS function via the web-based interface, on the tab of the relevant band, click the **ENABLE WPS** button.

When the WPS function is enabled, the Information section is available on the page.

Parameter	Description		
	The state of the WPS function:		
WPS state	• Configured (all needed settings are specified; these settings will be used upon establishing the wireless connection)		
	• Unconfigured (after activating the WPS function, the SSID and the encryption key will be configured automatically, the network authentication type will be changed to WPA2-PSK).		
Default PIN code	The PIN code of the router. This parameter is used when connecting the router to a registrar to set the parameters of the WPS function.		
Network name (SSID)	The name of the router's wireless network.		
Network authentication	The network authentication type specified for the wireless network.		
Encryption	The encryption type specified for the wireless network.		
Password PSK	The encryption password specified for the wireless network.		
UPDATE	Click the button to update the data on the page.		

Using WPS Function via Web-based Interface

To connect to the basic wireless network via the PIN method of the WPS function, follow the next steps:

- 1. Click the **ENABLE WPS** button.
- 2. In the WPS Control section, click the ESTABLISH CONNECTION button.
- 3. In the opened window, select the **PIN** value from the **WPS method** drop-down list.
- 4. Select the PIN method in the software of the wireless device that you want to connect to the router's WLAN.
- 5. Click the relevant button in the software of the wireless device that you want to connect to the WLAN.
- 6. Right after that, enter the PIN code specified on the cover of the wireless device or in its software in the **PIN code** field.
- 7. Click the **CONNECT** button in the web-based interface of the router.

To connect to the basic wireless network via the PBC method of the WPS function, follow the next steps:

- 1. Click the **ENABLE WPS** button.
- 2. In the **WPS Control** section, click the **ESTABLISH CONNECTION** button.
- 3. In the opened window, select the **PBC** value from the **WPS method** drop-down list.
- 4. Select the PBC method in the software of the wireless device that you want to connect to the router's WLAN.
- 5. Click the relevant button in the software or press the WPS button on the cover of the wireless device that you want to connect to the WLAN.
- 6. Right after that, click the **CONNECT** button in the web-based interface of the router.

Using WPS Function without Web-based Interface

You can use the WPS function without accessing the web-based interface of the router. To do this, you need to configure the following router's settings:

- 1. Specify relevant security settings for the wireless network of the router.
- 2. Make sure that the **Enable WPS function with hardware button** switch is moved to the right on the tabs of both bands.
- 3. Click the **ENABLE WPS** button.
- 4. Close the web-based interface (click the **Logout** line of the menu).

Later you will be able to add wireless devices to the WLAN by pressing the **WPS** button of the router.

- 1. Select the PBC method in the software of the wireless device that you want to connect to the router's WLAN.
- 2. Click the relevant button in the software or press the WPS button on the cover of the wireless device that you want to connect to the WLAN.
- 3. Press the **WPS** button of the router, hold it for 2 seconds, and release. The **WPS** LED should start blinking.

WMM

On the Wi-Fi / WMM page, you can enable the Wi-Fi Multimedia function.

The WMM function implements the QoS features for Wi-Fi networks. It helps to improve the quality of data transfer over Wi-Fi networks by prioritizing different types of traffic.

Select the needed action from the drop-down list in the **Work mode** section to configure the WMM function:

- **Auto**: the settings of the WMM function are configured automatically (the value is specified by default).
- **Manual**: the settings of the WMM function are configured manually. When this value is selected, the **Access Point** and **Station** sections are displayed on the page.

VPS						W	'MM					
			2.4 GHz				_			5 GHz		
	i Multir echanism fo		Wi-Fi network	c performar	nce. It is re	ecommend	ed for users	not to chan	ge the specifie	d values		
Work m						•						
Wallu	a					•						
	ss Point						Static	n				
		CWMin	CWMax	ТХОР	ACM	АСК	Static	n AIFSN	CWMin	CWMax	ТХОР	ACM
Acce	ss Point		CWMax	TXOP 0	ACM				CWMin 15	CWMax 1023	TXOP 0	ACM off
Acce:	SS Point AIFSN	CWMin				ACK	AC	AIFSN				
Acce: AC BE	SS Point AIFSN 3	CWMin 15	63	0	off	ACK off	AC BE	AIFSN 3	15	1023	0	off

Figure 137. The page for configuring the WMM function.

All needed settings for the WMM function are specified in the device's system. Changing parameters manually may negatively affect your WLAN!

The WMM function allows assigning priorities for four Access Categories (AC):

- **BK** (*Background*), low priority traffic (print jobs, file downloads, etc.).
- **BE** (*Best Effort*), traffic from legacy devices or devices/applications that do not support QoS.
- **VI** (*Video*).
- **VO** (*Voice*).

Parameters of the Access Categories are defined for both the router itself (in the **Access Point** section) and wireless devices connected to it (in the **Station** section).

To edit the parameters of an Access Category, left-click the relevant line. In the opened window, change the needed parameters.

Edit Access Backgroun	; Point: d	×
AIFSN*		_
CWMin		•
31		•
CWMax 1023		-
TXOP*		
0		
ACM		
ACK		
SAVE	CLOSE	

Figure 138. The window for changing parameters of the WMM function.

Parameter	Description
AIFSN	<i>Arbitrary Inter-Frame Space Number</i> . This parameter influences time delays for the relevant Access Category. The lower the value, the higher is the Access Category priority.
CWMin / CWMax	<i>Contention Window Minimum/Contention Window Maximum.</i> Both fields influence time delays for the relevant Access Category. The CWMax field value should not be lower, than the CWMin field value. The lower the difference between the CWMax field value and the CWMin field value, the higher is the Access Category priority.

Parameter	Description
ТХОР	<i>Transmission Opportunity</i> . The higher the value, the higher is the Access Category priority.
ACM	<i>Admission Control Mandatory.</i> If the switch is moved to the right, the device cannot use the relevant Access Category.
ACK	 Acknowledgment. Answering response requests while transmitting. Displayed only in the Access Point section. If the switch is moved to the left, the router answers requests. If the switch is moved to the right, the router does not answer requests.

Click the **SAVE** button.

Client

On the **Wi-Fi / Client** page, you can configure the router as a client to connect to a wireless access point or to a WISP. To configure the 2.4GHz band or 5GHz band, go to the relevant tab.

Configuration	Client		E
2.4GHz		5GHz	
Wi-Fi Client You can configure the router as a client to connect	to a wireless access point or to a WISP.		
Broadcast wireless network 2.4 GHz If the broadcast switch is moved to the left, devices can router's WLAN. Upon that the router can connect to another wireless client.			
Connecting to network Select network from list	•		
APPLY			
Wireless Networks UPDATE LIST			
Network name (SSID)	Security Settings		Channel
ିକ [SDK2] DIR-882-BDBF-BDBE	[WPA2-PSK] [AES]		1

Figure 139. The page for configuring the client mode.

To configure the router as a client, move the **Enable** switch to the right. Upon that the following fields are displayed on the page:

Parameter	Description
Broadcast wireless network 2.4 GHz / Broadcast wireless network 5 GHz	If the switch is moved to the left, devices cannot connect to the router's WLAN. Upon that the router can connect to another access point as a wireless client.
Connecting to network	A method for connecting to another access point.

In the **Wireless Networks** section, the list of available wireless networks is displayed. To view the latest data on available wireless networks, click the **UPDATE LIST** button.

To connect to a wireless network from the list, select the needed network. Move the **Network options** switch to the right to view more detailed information on the network to which the router connects. If a password is required, enter it in the relevant field. Click the **CONNECT** button.

To connect to a hidden network, select the **Connect to hidden network** value from the **Connecting to network** drop-down list. Enter the name of the network in the **Network name** (SSID) field. If needed, fill in the **BSSID** field. Then select the needed type of authentication from the **Network authentication** drop-down list.

When the **Open** or **WEP** authentication type is selected, the following settings are displayed on the page:

Parameter	Description
Enable encryption WEP	 For Open authentication type only. To activate WEP encryption, move the switch to the right. Upon that the Default key ID drop-down list, the Encryption key WEP as HEX switch, and four Encryption key fields are displayed on the
Default key ID	page.The number of the key (from first to fourth) which will be used for WEP encryption.
Encryption key WEP as HEX	Move the switch to the right to set a hexadecimal number as a key for encryption.
Encryption key (1-4)	Keys for WEP encryption. The router uses the key selected from the Default key ID drop-down list. It is required to specify all the fields. Click the Show icon (\bigotimes) to display the entered key.

When the WPA-PSK, WPA2-PSK, WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK mixed, WPA3-SAE, and WPA2-PSK/WPA3-SAE mixed authentication type is selected, the following fields are displayed:

Parameter	Description
Password PSK	A password for WPA encryption. Click the Show icon (\bigotimes) to display the entered key.
	An encryption method: TKIP , AES , or TKIP+AES .
Encryption type	TKIP and TKIP+AES encryption types are not available for WPA3-SAE and WPA2-PSK/WPA3-SAE mixed authentication types.

When you have configured the parameters, click the **APPLY** button.

When connecting to a wireless access point, the wireless channel of DVG-5402G/GF will switch to the channel of the access point to which you have connected.

In addition, the **Connection Information** section in which you can view the connection status and the network basic parameters is displayed.

If you want to connect to the WISP network, after configuring the device as a client, you need to create a WAN connection with relevant parameters for the **WiFiClient_2GHz** interface in the 2.4GHz band or for the **WiFiClient_5GHz** interface in the 5GHz band.

Client Shaping

On the **Wi-Fi / Client Shaping** page, you can limit the maximum bandwidth of upstream and downstream traffic for each wireless client of the router by its MAC address.

Client	Client Shaping	
Client Sha You can limit the	ping e maximum bandwidth of upstream and downstream traffic for each wireless client of the router by its MAC address.	
Rules No rule created	+	

Figure 140. The Wi-Fi / Client Shaping page.

If you want to limit the maximum bandwidth of traffic for the router's wireless client, create a relevant rule. To do this, click the **ADD** button (+).

Add Rule	×
Frequency band 2.4 GHz	-
SSID DVG-XXX	-
Enabled	
MAC address*	•
Upload Not limited	
Maximum rate (Mbit/s)*	
Download Not limited	
Maximum rate (Mbit/s)*	
SAVE	

Figure 141. The window for setting up rate limit.

Parameter	Description				
Frequency band	From the drop-down list, select a band of the wireless network.				
SSID	A wireless network to which the rule will be applied. Select the needed value from the drop-down list.				
Enabled	If the switch is moved to the right, the rule is active. Move the switch to the left to disable the rule.				
MAC address	In the field, enter the MAC address to which the rule will be applied. You can enter the MAC address of a device connected to the router's LAN at the moment. To do this, select the relevant device from the drop-down list (the field will be filled in automatically).				
	Upload				
Maximum rate	Specify the maximum value of the upstream traffic rate (Mbps) or move the Not limited switch to the right not to limit the maximum bandwidth of upstream traffic.				
	Download				
Maximum rate	Specify the maximum value of the downstream traffic rate (Mbps) or move the Not limited switch to the right not to limit the maximum bandwidth of downstream traffic.				

In the opened window, you can specify the following parameters:

After specifying the needed parameters, click the **SAVE** button.

To edit a rule, left-click the relevant rule. In the opened window, change the needed parameters and click the **SAVE** button.

To remove a rule, select the checkbox located to the left of the relevant line in the table and click the **DELETE** button ($\boxed{10}$).

To set a schedule for the bandwidth limitation rule, click the **Set schedule** icon () in the line corresponding to this rule. In the opened window, from the **Rule** drop-down list, select the **Create rule** value to create a new schedule (see the *Schedule* section, page 324) or select the **Select an existing one** value to use the existing one. Existing schedules are displayed in the **Rule name** drop-down list.

To enable the bandwidth limitation rule at the time specified in the schedule and disable it at the other time, select the **Enable rule** value from the **Action** drop-down list and click the **SAVE** button.

To disable the bandwidth limitation rule at the time specified in the schedule and enable it at the other time, select the **Disable rule** value from the **Action** drop-down list and click the **SAVE** button.

To change or delete the schedule for a rule, click the **Edit schedule** icon (\bigcirc) in the line corresponding to this rule. In the opened window, change the parameters and click the **SAVE** button or click the **DELETE FROM SCHEDULE** button.

Additional

On page of the **Wi-Fi / Additional** section, you can define additional parameters for the WLAN of the router. To configure the 2.4GHz band or 5GHz band, go to the relevant tab.

Changing parameters presented on this page may negatively affect your WLAN!

Ξ ≺ Summary Add	litional	
2.4 GHz	5 GHz	
Wi-Fi Additional Settings You can define additional parameters for the WLAN of the router.		
Bandwidth Auto ~	B/G protection	•
Using bandwidth of one or several channels of the wireless network simultaneously	Short GI	•
Current bandwidth: 40 MHz Autonegotiation 20/40 (Coexistence)	Beacon period (in milliseconds)* 100	
Automatic change of bandwidth in the loaded environment TX power (in percent)	RTS threshold (in bytes)* 2347	
100 -	Frag threshold (in bytes)* 2346	
Auto ~	DTIM period (in beacon frames)* 1	
 Drop multicast Disables multicasting (IGMP, SSDP, etc.) for the wireless network. In some cases this helps to improve performance 	• Station Keep Alive (in seconds)* O	
Enable TX Beamforming Flexible change of the antennas' radiation pattern. In some cases this helps to improve performance		
stbc		
APPLY		

Figure 142. Additional settings of the WLAN.

Parameter	Description			
	The channel bandwidth for 802.11n standard in the 2.4GHz band (the 2.4 GHz tab).			
	• 20 MHz : 802.11n clients operate at 20MHz channels.			
	• 20/40 MHz : 802.11n clients operate at 20MHz or 40MHz channels.			
	• Auto: The router automatically chooses the most suitable channel bandwidth for 802.11n clients.			
Bandwidth	The channel bandwidth for 802.11n and 802.11ac standards in 5GHz band (the 5 GHz tab).			
	• 20 MHz : 802.11n and 802.11ac clients operate at 20MHz channels.			
	• 20/40 MHz : 802.11n and 802.11ac clients operate at 20MHz or 40MHz channels.			
	• 20/40/80 MHz : 802.11ac clients operate at 20MHz, 40MHz, or 80MHz channels.			
	• Auto : The router automatically chooses the most suitable channel bandwidth for 802.11n and 802.11ac clients.			
	Available on the 2.4 GHz tab.			
Autonegotiation 20/40 (Coexistence)	Move the switch to the right to let the router automatically chood the most suitable channel bandwidth (20MHz or 40MHz) for the connected devices (this setting can substantially lower the dat transfer rate of your wireless network). The switch is displayed when the 20/40 MHz or Auto value is selected from the Bandwid drop-down list.			
TX power	The transmit power (in percentage terms) of the router.			
	This parameter defines the length of the CRC block sent by the router when communicating to wireless devices.			
	Select the needed value from the drop-down list.			
Preamble	• Auto : The length of the block is defined automatically.			
	• Long: The long block.			
	• Short : The short block (this value is recommended for networks with high-volume traffic).			

Parameter	Description	
	Available on the 5 GHz tab.	
Enable DFS	Move the switch to the right to enable the DFS (<i>Dynamic Frequency Selection</i>) mechanism. Upon that the router uses the channels at which radars and other mobile or stationary radio systems can operate, but switches to other channels if these devices require this. In order to use the DFS mechanism, the automatic channel selection should be enabled (on the Wi-Fi / Basic Settings page).	
	Move the switch to the left not to let the router use the channels at which radars and other mobile or stationary radio systems can operate.	
Drop multicast	Move the switch to the right to disable multicasting for the router's WLAN. Move the switch to the left to enable multicasting from the WAN connection selected on the Advanced / IGMP page.	
Enable TX Beamforming	TX Beamforming is the signal processing/directing technique which helps to support a high enough transfer rate in the areas with difficult conditions for the signal propagation.	
-	Move the switch to the right to improve the signal quality.	
STBC	The STBC (<i>Space-time block coding</i>) technique allows increasing data transfer reliability even for portable devices equipped with poor antennas (smartphones, pads, etc.) due to using several data streams and processing several versions or received data.	
	Move the switch to the right if you need to use the STBC technique.	
	Available on the 2.4 GHz tab.	
	The 802.11b and 802.11g protection function is used to minimize collisions between devices of your wireless network.	

Select a value from the drop-down list.

- Auto: The protection function is enabled and disabled • automatically depending on the state of the network (this **B/G protection** value is recommended if your wireless local area network consists of both 802.11b and 802.11g devices). Always On: The protection function is always enabled (this setting can substantially lower the efficiency of your wireless network).
 - Always Off: The protection function is always disabled.

Parameter	Description		
	Guard interval (in nanoseconds). This parameter defines the interval between symbols transmitted when the router is communicating to wireless devices.		
Short GI	• Enable : The router uses the 400 ns short guard interval. Only for the wireless network operating modes which support 802.11n and 802.11ac standards (see the value of the Wireless mode drop-down list on the Wi-Fi / Basic Settings page).		
	• Disable : The router uses the 800 ns standard guard interval.		
Beacon period	The time interval (in milliseconds) between packets sent to synchronize the wireless network.		
RTS threshold	The minimum size (in bytes) of a packet for which an RTS frame is transmitted.		
Frag threshold	The maximum size (in bytes) of a non-fragmented packet. Larger packets are fragmented (divided).		
DTIM period	The number of beacon frames between sending DTIM messages (messages notifying on broadcast or multicast transmission).		
Station Keep Alive	The time interval (in seconds) between keep alive checks of wireless devices from your WLAN. When the value 0 is specified, the checking is disabled.		

When you have configured the parameters, click the $\ensuremath{\mathsf{APPLY}}$ button.

MAC Filter

On the **Wi-Fi / MAC Filter** page, you can define a set of MAC addresses of devices which will be allowed to access the WLAN, or define MAC addresses of devices which will not be allowed to access the WLAN.



😑 < Addi	tional MAC Filter 🖸
	er a set of MAC addresses of devices which will be allowed to access the WLAN, or define MAC addresses of devices which will to access the WLAN.
It is	recommended to configure the Wi-Fi MAC filter through a wired connection to the device
2.4 GHz	5 GHz
DVG-XXX (i) Off	DVG-XXX-5G (i) Off
Filters No rules create	+ ed for MAC filter

Figure 143. The page for configuring the MAC filter for the wireless network.

By default, the Wi-Fi MAC filter is disabled.

To configure the MAC filter, first you need to create rules (specify MAC addresses of devices for which the specified filtering modes will be applied). To do this, click the **ADD** button (+).

Add Rule	×
Frequency band	
2.4 GHz	•
SSID	
DVG-XXX	•
() MAC filters for this network are disabled	
MAC address*	•
Name*	
(i) The number of characters should not excee	ed 32
Enable	
SAVE	

Figure 144. The window for adding a rule for the MAC filter.

You can specify the following parameters:

Parameter	Description	
Frequency band	From the drop-down list, select a band of the wireless network.	
SSID	A wireless network to which the rule will be applied. Select the needed value from the drop-down list.	
MAC address	In the field, enter the MAC address to which the selected filtering mode will be applied.	
Name	The name of the device for easier identification. You can specify any name.	
Enable	If the switch is moved to the right, the rule is active. Move the switch to the left to disable the rule.	

When you have configured the parameters, click the **SAVE** button.

To edit the parameters of the existing rule, in the **Filters** section, left-click the needed rule. In the opened window, change the settings and click the **SAVE** button.

To remove the rule from the page, in the **Filters** section, select the checkbox located to the left of the relevant rule and click the **DELETE** button ($\boxed{10}$).

After creating the rules you need to configure the filtering modes.

To open the basic or additional wireless network for the devices which MAC addresses are specified on this page and to close the wireless network for all other devices, in the section corresponding to the band (2.4 GHz or 5 GHz), left-click the line of the wireless network. In the opened window, move the Enable MAC filter switch to the right. Upon that the MAC filter restrict mode drop-down list will be displayed. Select the Allow value from the drop-down list and click the SAVE button.

To close the wireless network for the devices which MAC addresses are specified on this page, select the **Deny** value from the **MAC filter restrict mode** drop-down list and click the **SAVE** button.

To set a schedule for the MAC filter rule, click the **Set schedule** icon ((**S**)) in the line corresponding to this rule. In the opened window, from the **Rule** drop-down list, select the **Create rule** value to create a new schedule (see the *Schedule* section, page 324) or select the **Select an existing one** value to use the existing one. Existing schedules are displayed in the **Rule name** drop-down list.

To enable the MAC filter rule at the time specified in the schedule and disable it at the other time, select the **Enable rule** value from the **Action** drop-down list and click the **SAVE** button.

To disable the MAC filter rule at the time specified in the schedule and enable it at the other time, select the **Disable rule** value from the **Action** drop-down list and click the **SAVE** button.

To change or delete the schedule for a rule, click the **Edit schedule** icon (\bigcirc) in the line corresponding to this rule. In the opened window, change the parameters and click the **SAVE** button or click the **DELETE FROM SCHEDULE** button.

Print Server

On the **Print Server** page, you can configure the router as a print server. Being configured in this way, the router will allow your LAN users to share the printer connected to the USB port of the router.

To connect a printer to the router, power off both devices. Connect the printer to the USB port of the router, power on the printer, then power on the router.

≡ < Summary Pr	int Server 🖸
Print Server You can configure the router as a print server. Being configured connected to the USB port of the router.	in this way, the router will allow your LAN users to share the printer
Enable print server Printer Not selected	In order to operate the print server, you should also configure the client PC. For more information on how to configure the print server please refer to the FAQ section at www.dlink.ru.
Status of print server: Not connected	•
APPLY	

Figure 145. The Print Server page.

To configure the router as a print server, move the **Enable print server** switch to the right. Make sure that the printer connected to the router is selected from the **Printer** drop-down list. Click the **APPLY** button. The status of the connected device will be displayed in the **Status of print server** field.

If you don't want to use the router as a print server, move the **Enable print server** switch to the left and click the **APPLY** button.

USB Storage

This menu is designed to operate USB storages. Here you can do the following:

- view data on the connected USB storage
- create accounts for users to allow access to the content of the USB storage
- enable the built-in Samba server of the router
- enable the built-in FTP server of the router
- view content of the connected USB storage
- enable the built-in DLNA server of the router
- configure the built-in Transmission torrent client and manage distributing and downloading processes
- enable the XUPNPD plug-in.

Information

On the **USB Storage / Information** page, you can view data on the USB storage connected to the router.

😑 < USB Users	Inforn	nation	
JetFlash TS2GJFV30		JetFlash TS2GJFV30	
usb1_1		usb1_2	
Total size:	1.04 GB	Total size:	882.00 MB
Free:	1016.00 MB	Free:	859.00 MB
Filesystem:	FAT16/32	Filesystem:	NTFS
UNMOUNT		UNMOUNT	
	UNMOUNT AL	L STORAGES	

Figure 146. The USB Storage / Information page.

The following data are presented on the page: the name, total and free space of the storage, and the type of its file system (supported file systems: FAT16/32, exFAT, NTFS, ext2/3/4).

If the USB storage is divided into volumes, a section for every volume (partition) of the USB storage is displayed on the page.

To safely disconnect the USB storage or a volume of the USB storage, click the **UNMOUNT** button in the relevant section and wait for several seconds.

To disconnect all volumes of the USB storage, click the UNMOUNT ALL STORAGES button.

USB Users

On the **USB Storage / USB Users** page, you can create user accounts to provide access to data on the USB storage connected to the router.

Information	USB Users	
	(+)	
	There are no users	
	You can add first user	
	ADD	

Figure 147. The USB Storage / USB Users page.

To create a new user account, click the **ADD** button (+).

Add User	×
Username*	
(i) The number of characters should not	exceed 32
Password*	Ø
Read only	
SAVE	

Figure 148. The window for adding a user.

In the opened window, in the **Username** field, specify a username, and in the **Password** field – the password for the account. Use digits, Latin letters (uppercase and/or lowercase), and other characters available in the US keyboard layout.¹⁵

Some reserved words (e.g., **root**, **admin**, **nobody**, etc.) cannot be usernames.

Move the **Read only** switch to the right not to let the user create, change, or delete files.

Click the **SAVE** button.

To view passwords of all user accounts, move the **Show password** switch to the right.

^{15 0-9,} A-Z, a-z, space, !"#\$%&'()*+,-./:;<=>?@[\]^_`{|}~.

To edit the parameters of an account, select the relevant line in the table. In the opened window, enter a new value in the relevant field, and then click the **SAVE** button.

To remove an account, select the checkbox located to the left of the relevant line in the table and click the **DELETE** button ($\boxed{10}$).

Samba

On the **USB Storage / Samba** page, you can enable the built-in Samba server of the router to provide access to the USB storage for users of your LAN.

Figure 149. The USB Storage / Samba page.

To enable the Samba server, move the Enable Samba server switch to the right.

The **Anonymous login** switch (by default, the switch is moved to the right) allows anonymous access to the content of the USB storage for users of your LAN.

If you want to provide authorized access to the content of the USB storage for users of your LAN, move the switch to the left. After applying the parameters on this page, go to the **USB Storage** *I* **USB Users** page and create needed accounts.

In the **Work group** field, leave the value specified by default (**WORKGROUP**) or specify a new name of a workgroup which participants will have access to the content of the USB storage.

In the **Short description** field, you can specify an additional description for the USB storage. This value will be displayed in some operating systems. Use digits and/or Latin characters.

In the **NetBIOS** field, specify a name of the USB storage which will be displayed for users of your LAN. Use digits and/or Latin characters.

To allow access only to a certain folder of the USB storage, click the ADD (+) button in the **Directories** section.

Add directory	×
Path*	م
Name*	
(i) The number of characters shoul	d not exceed 32
SAVE	

Figure 150. Specifying a folder.

In the opened window, locate a folder containing files. To do this, click the **Search** icon (\mathbf{Q}) in the **Path** field. Then go to the needed folder and click the **SELECT** button.

In the **Name** field, specify a name of the selected folder which will be displayed for users of your LAN. Use digits and/or Latin characters.

Click the **SAVE** button.

To remove a folder from the list in the **Directories** section, select the checkbox located to the left

of the relevant line in the table and click the **DELETE** button ($\boxed{10}$).

After specifying the needed parameters, click the **APPLY** button.

To disable the built-in Samba server of the router, move the **Enable Samba server** switch to the left and click the **APPLY** button.

FTP

On the **USB Storage / FTP** page, you can enable the built-in FTP server of the router to provide access to the USB storage for users of your LAN.

≡	✓ USB Modem FTP	
FT	P	
You	can enable the built-in FTP server of the router to provide access to the USB storage for users of your LAN.	
	Enable FTP server	
(j)	For correct display of containing Cyrillic letters file names, please use UTF-8 encoding on the FTP client	
Со	nfiguring FTP Server	
\bigcirc	Anonymous login	
<u> </u>	If anonymous login is disabled, to access the USB storage content it will be led to create users	
<u> </u>	When anonymous access is used, all users connected via the FTP server have -only access rights	
Port		
21		
Dire	ectory Q	
4	APPLY	

Figure 151. The USB Storage / FTP page.

To enable the FTP server, move the **Enable FTP server** switch to the right.

Move the **Anonymous login** switch to the right to allow anonymous access to the content of the USB storage for users of your LAN. If you want to provide authorized access to the content of the USB storage for users of your LAN, move the switch to the left. After applying the parameters on this page, go to the **USB Storage / USB Users** page and create needed accounts.

If needed, change the router's port used by the FTP server in the **Port** field (by default, the standard port **21** is specified).

To allow access only to a certain folder of the USB storage for users of your LAN, locate a folder containing files. To do this, click the **Search** icon (\mathbf{Q}) in the **Directory** field. Then go to the needed folder and click the **SELECT** button.

After specifying the needed parameters, click the **APPLY** button.

To allow access to all the content of the USB storage for users of your LAN again, remove the value specified in the **Directory** field and click the **APPLY** button.

To disable the built-in FTP server of the router, move the **Enable FTP server** switch to the left and click the **APPLY** button.

Filebrowser

On the **USB Storage / Filebrowser** page, you can view the content of your USB storage connected to the router and remove separate folders and files from the USB storage.

≡	< Info	ormation	Filebrowser	
	ebrow can view		e router and remove separate folders and files from the US	B storage.
4	/	b1_1 116/32		1016.00 MB / 1.04 GB
ţ		b1_2 FS		859.00 MB / 882.00 MB

Figure 152. The USB Storage / Filebrowser page.

To view the content of the USB storage, click the icon of the storage or storage partition. The list of folders and files will be displayed on the page.

To go to a folder, click the line corresponding to this folder.

To refresh the folder contents, click the **Actions** icon (:) in the line corresponding to this folder and select the **Refresh** value.

To remove a folder or file, click the **Actions** icon (:) in the line corresponding to this folder or file and select the **Delete** value.

DLNA

On the **USB Storage / DLNA** page, you can enable the built-in DLNA server of the router to provide access to the USB storage for users of your LAN.

The built-in media server allows DLNA certified devices of your LAN to play multimedia content of the USB storage. Multimedia content can be played only when a USB storage is connected to the router.

E Configuration DL	NA 🖸
DLNA On the DLNA page, you can enable the built-in DLNA server of the rout The built-in media server allows DLNA certified devices of your LAN to played only when a USB storage is connected to the router. To enable the service, you must specify at least one Media Folder.	
Main Settings Enable Update interval* 900	Media Folders + II Path Type
DLNA server name* D-Link DLNA Server	

Figure 153. The USB Storage / DLNA page.

To enable the DLNA server, move the **Enable** switch to the right.

In the **Update interval** field, specify the time period (in seconds), at the end of which the media server updates the file list of the USB storage, or leave the value specified by default (**900**).

In the **DLNA server name** field, specify a name of the DLNA server which will be displayed for users of your LAN or leave the value specified by default (**D-Link DLNA Server**). Use digits and/or Latin characters.

To allow access to the content of the USB storage for users of your LAN, click the **ADD** (+) button in the **Media Folders** section.

Specify Media Folder	×
Path*	
	۹
Туре*	
All	•

Figure 154. Specifying a media folder.

In the opened window, locate a folder containing files. To do this, click the **Search** icon (\mathbf{Q}) in the **Path** field. Then go to the needed folder and click the **SELECT** button.

For each folder you can define the type of files which will be available for users of your LAN. To do this, select the needed type of files from the **Type** drop-down list. To share all files of a folder, select the **All** value from the **Type** drop-down list.

Click the **SAVE** button.

To remove a folder from the list in the Media Folders section, select the checkbox located to the

left of the relevant line in the table and click the **DELETE** ($\overline{\square}$) button.

After specifying all needed settings on the **USB Storage / DLNA** page, click the **APPLY** button.

To disable the built-in DLNA server of the router, move the **Enable** switch to the left and click the **APPLY** button.

Torrent Client

On the **USB Storage / Torrent Client** page, you can configure all needed settings for the built-in Transmission client.

E 🗸 Summary Torre	nt Client 🖸
Transmission Using the web-based interface of the built-in Transmission torrent client y connected to the router.	/ou can manage the process of downloading files to the USB storage
Carlo Enable	
Main Settings	Authorization
Port* 52666	D Enable
Path* Q	
Directory*	
torrents	
Enable download queue	
Download queue size* 1	
Peer limit*	
4	
The recommended maximum number of peers is 4. A higher value can result in unstable performance.	
Enable download speed limit	
Use uTP	
Web-based interface port*	
9091 Web-based interface page: http://192.168.8.254;9091	
web-based interface page. http://192.100.0.2.34.3031	
APPLY	

Figure 155. The USB Storage / Torrent Client page.

You can specify the following parameters:

Parameter	Description	
Transmission		
Enable	Move the switch to the right to activate the Transmission client.	
Main Settings		
Port	The router's port which will be used by the Transmission client.	

Parameter	Description
Path	Locate data of the Transmission client. To do this, click the Search icon (\mathbf{Q}), select the needed value, and click the SELECT button.
Directory	The folder on the USB storage where data of the Transmission client will be stored.
Enable download queue	Move the switch to the right if you want to limit the number of simultaneous downloads. Upon that the Download queue size field will be displayed.
	Move the switch to the left not to limit the number of simultaneous downloads.
Download queue size	The maximum number of simultaneous downloads. By default, the value 1 is specified.
Peer limit	The maximum number of the service users from which you can download files.
Enable download speed limit	Move the switch to the right to limit the maximum file download speed. In the Download speed limit field displayed, specify the maximum value of speed (KBps).
	Move the switch to the left not to limit the maximum download speed.
Use uTP	Move the switch to the right to enable μ TP (<i>Micro Transport Protocol, a transport protocol for file sharing</i>). Such a setting can increase the load on the router.
	Move the switch to the left to disable μ TP.
Web-based interface port	The port on which the web-based interface of the Transmission client is available.
	Authorization
Enable	Move the switch to the right if you want the Transmission client to request for username and password when accessing its web-based interface. Then fill in the Username and Password fields.
Username	The username to access the web-based interface of the Transmission client.
Password	The password to access the web-based interface of the Transmission client.

After specifying the needed parameters, click the **APPLY** button.

In the **Web-based interface page** field, the address of the web-based interface of the Transmission client is displayed. To access the web-based interface of the Transmission client, click the link.

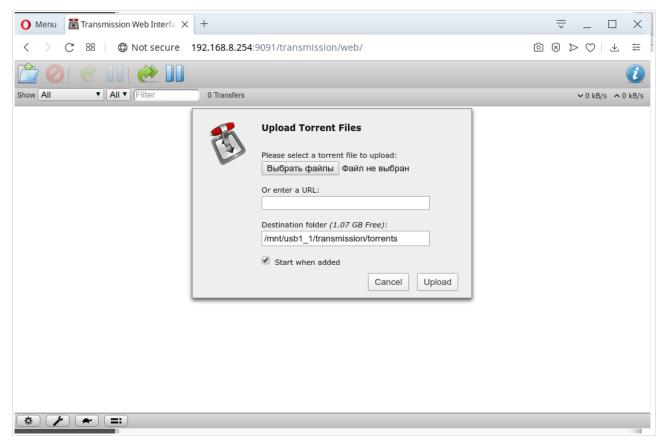


Figure 156. The web-based interface of the Transmission torrent client.

Using the web-based interface of the built-in Transmission torrent client you can manage the process of downloading files to the USB storage connected to the router.

The following buttons are available on the page:

Parameter	Description
Open Torrent	Click the button to add a new torrent file (a metadata file according to which the Transmission client downloads files) to the download queue. In the dialog box appeared, select a file stored on your PC and click the Upload button.
Remove Selected Torrents	Select the torrent file which you want to remove from the download queue and click the button.
Start Selected Torrents	Select the torrent file corresponding to the download which should be restarted and click the button.

Parameter	Description
Start All Torrents	Click the button to restart all downloads. If you limited the maximum number of simultaneous downloads, the Transmission client starts processing of the specified number of torrent files; after completing download of the first one, the client proceeds to the next file in the queue.
Pause Selected Torrents	Select the torrent file corresponding to the download which should be stopped and click the button.
Pause All Torrents	Click the button to stop all downloads.
Toggle Inspector	Select a torrent file and click the button to view its data.

XUPNPD

On the **USB Storage / XUPNPD** page, you can enable the XUPNPD plug-in. It allows to broadcast media content received from the Internet sources or IPTV service to DLNA-certified devices of your LAN.

Summary XUPNPD	
PD	
nable	
× Q	
http://192.168.8.254:4044	
APPLY	
	IPD rogram is a light DLNA Media Server which provides service for sharing IPTV unicast streams over local area network (with UDPXY for multicast to HTTP nversion). Enable

Figure 157. The USB Storage / XUPNPD page.

To use the XUPNPD plug-in, connect a USB storage to the router and move the **Enable** switch to the right.

To let IPTV services operate using the XUPNPD plug-in, enable the UDPXY application.

In the **Directory** field, locate a folder to which playlists added on the page of the XUPNPD plug-in will be saved. To do this, click the **Search** icon (\mathbf{Q}), then go to the needed folder and click the **SELECT** button.

Click the **APPLY** button.

In the **Service** field, the address of the web-based interface of the XUPNPD plug-in is displayed. To access the page of the XUPNPD plug-in and configure all needed settings, click the link.

	PTV			
Uptime: 0 da SSDP Interfa WWW Port: 4 Model: xupp	ys, 0:00:01 ace: 192.16 4044 od-1.032 r: Anton Bu			m>
	0			
Playlists	Feeds	Downloads	Status	

Figure 158. The XUPNPD plug-in page.

USB Modem

This menu is designed to operate USB modems.

Some models of USB modems do not allow performing operations available in this menu section through the web-based interface of the router.

If the PIN code check for the SIM card inserted into the USB modem is not disabled, the relevant notification will be displayed in the top right corner of the page.

Notification SIM card is blocked	
→ E3131: ENTER PIN	
	SIM card is blocked

Figure 159. The notification on the PIN code check.

Click the **ENTER PIN** button and enter the PIN code in the **PIN input** window. Click the **Show** icon ($\langle \mathbf{x} \rangle$) to display the entered code. Then click the **APPLY** button.

PIN input	×
PIN*	Ø
(i) The number of remaining attempts: 3	
APPLY	

Figure 160. The window for entering the PIN code.

Some USB modems in the router mode and Android smartphones in the modem mode have an IP address from the subnet which coincides with the router's local subnet. In this case, the router's web-based interface can be unavailable. For correct operation, disconnect the device from the USB port and reboot the router. Then access the web-based interface, go to the **Connections Setup** *I* **LAN** page, and change the value of the **IP address** field on the **IPv4** tab (for example, specify the value **192.168.2.1**). Wait until the router is rebooted.

Basic Settings

On the **USB Modem / Modem name / Basic Settings** page, you can view data on the USB modem connected to the router, change the PIN code of the SIM card inserted into your USB modem, disable or enable the check of the PIN code.

🕻 WAN	NAN Basic Settings		۵
Information		Network information	
Model	E3131	Mode	36
Vendor		RSSI	-67 dBm
IMEI	862733019089559	Signal level	
Interface		Operator name	"MTS RUS"
Revision	21.158.13.03.143	Roaming	Disable
Serial number	-	IMSI	250015602723576
		PIN status	Device is unlocked
		SMS	5
		DISABLE PIN CODE REQUEST	
		CHANGING PIN CODE	
		USSD	

Figure 161. The USB Modem / Modem name / Basic Settings page.

If the PIN code check for the SIM card inserted into your USB modem is disabled, then an active WAN connection with default settings (for LTE modems) or the operator's settings (for GSM modems) will be automatically created when plugging the USB modem into the router. The connection will be displayed on the **Connections Setup / WAN** page.

When a USB modem is connected to the router, the following data are displayed on the page:

Parameter	Description
	Information
Model	The alphanumeric code of the model of your USB modem.
Vendor	The manufacturer of your USB modem.
IMEI	The code stored in the memory of the USB modem.
Interface	The network interface name.
Revision	The revision of the firmware of your USB modem.
Serial number	The unique identifier assigned to the device by its manufacturer.

User Manual

Parameter	Description
	Network information
Mode	A type of the network to which the USB modem is connected.
RSSI	The strength of the signal received by the USB modem.
Signal level	The signal level at the input of the modem's receiver. The zero signal level shows that you are out of the coverage area of the selected operator's network.
Operator name	The name of the mobile operator proving the service.
Roaming	Roaming mode status of the SIM card inserted into the USB modem.
IMSI	The code stored in the SIM card inserted into your USB modem.
PIN status	PIN code request status of the SIM card inserted into the USB modem.
SMS	The number of text messages stored in the memory of the SIM card inserted into the USB modem. Click the number of text messages in the line to go to USB Modem / Modem name / SMS page.

If the PIN code check for the SIM card inserted into your USB modem is not disabled, the **PIN INPUT** button is displayed on the page.

To disable the PIN code check, click the **DISABLE PIN CODE REQUEST** button (the button is displayed if the PIN code check is enabled). In the opened window, enter the current PIN code in the **PIN code** field and click the **DISABLE** button.

To enable the PIN code check, click the **ENABLE PIN CODE REQUEST** button (the button is displayed if the PIN code check is disabled). In the opened window, enter the PIN code used before disabling the check in the **PIN code** field and click the **ENABLE** button.

To change the PIN code, click the **CHANGING PIN CODE** button (the button is displayed if the PIN code check is enabled). In the opened window, enter the current code in the **PIN code** field, then enter a new code in the **New PIN code** and **New PIN code confirmation** fields and click the **SAVE** button.

If upon one of the operations described above you have entered an incorrect value in the **PIN code** field three times (the number of remaining attempts is displayed in the PIN input window), the SIM card inserted into your USB modem is blocked.

PUK input	×
PUK*	64
	¢,
New PIN code*	Ø
New PIN code confirmation*	Ø
(i) The number of remaining attempts: 10	
APPLY	

Figure 162. The USB Modem / Modem name / Basic Settings page. The window for PUK code input.

For further use of the card, click the **PUK INPUT** button, enter the PUK code in the relevant field, and then specify a new PIN code for your SIM card in the **New PIN code** and **New PIN code confirmation** fields. Click the **Show** icon (\bigotimes) to display the entered values. Click the **APPLY** button.

Click the USSD button to go to the USB Modem / Modem name / USSD page.

SMS

When a new text message is received, the relevant notification will be displayed in the top right corner of the page. Click the **CHECK** button. After clicking the button, the **USB Modem** / **Modem name** / **SMS** page opens.

On the **USB Modem / Modem name / SMS** page, you can create and send a text message and also view the history and status of sent and received messages stored in the memory of the SIM card.

		SMS		
SMS			SMS Mer	nory
SMS: SIM 1 Message filter Incoming Incoming Date and time 03.11.2020 10:39:21	From 79537421033	• Message J	Status Read	REPLY FORWARD

Figure 163. The USB Modem / Modem name / SMS page. The SMS tab.

To view all outgoing and incoming messages on the **SMS** tab, select the relevant value from the **Message filter** drop-down list.

To view the latest data on sent and received messages, click the **REFRESH** button.

To create and send a text message, click the **New message** button (\leq).

New message	×
Number	
ADD	
Message*	
Enter your message	
Entered characters: 0	
SEND	

Figure 164. The window for creating a new text message.

In the **Number** field, enter the recipient's phone number. If you need to send the text message to several recipients, click the **ADD** button, and in the line displayed, enter a phone number. Enter the text of the message in the **Message** field and click the **SEND** button.

To remove a message, select the checkbox located to the left of the relevant line in the table and

click the **DELETE** button (\blacksquare).

To reply to an incoming message, click the **REPLY** button in the line corresponding to the message.

To forward an incoming message, click the **FORWARD** button in the line corresponding to the message.

On the **SMS Memory** tab, you can view data on the number of messages and the state of the SIM card memory.

(Home	SMS		٥
SMS		SMS Memory	
SMS Memory: SIM 1			
Incoming:	-		
Outgoing:	-		
Total:	-		
Used memory:	1/5		

Figure 165. The USB Modem / Modem name / SMS page. The SMS Memory tab.

USSD

On the **USB Modem / Modem name / USSD** page, you can send a USSD command.¹⁶

USSD (*Unstructured Supplementary Service Data*) is a technology which provides real-time message exchange between a subscriber and a mobile operator's special application. USSD commands are often used to check the SIM card balance, receive data on the rate plan or service packets, etc.

✓ SMS	USSD	
USSD: SIM 1 You can send a USSD request		
Number*		
Response		
SEND		

Figure 166. The USB Modem / Modem name / USSD page.

In the **Number** field, enter a USSD command and click the **SEND** button. After a while, the results will be displayed in the **Response** field.

¹⁶ Contact your operator to get information on USSD commands and their functions.

Advanced

In this menu you can configure advanced settings of the router:

- create or edit VLANs
- allow the router to connect to a private Ethernet line
- add name servers
- configure a DDNS service
- configure autonegotiation or manually configure speed and duplex mode for each Ethernet port of the router
- configure notifications on the reason of the Internet connection failure
- define static routes
- configure TR-069 client
- enable the function of mirroring the router's ports
- enable the UPnP function
- enable the built-in UDPXY application for the router
- allow the router to use IGMP
- enable the RTSP, SIP ALG mechanisms, and PPPoE/PPTP/L2TP/IPsec pass through functions
- configure the CoovaChilli service.

VLAN

On the **Advanced / VLAN** page, you can edit existing and create new virtual networks (VLAN), e.g., for distinguishing traffic or specifying additional WAN interfaces.

By default, 2 VLANs are created in the router's system.

- LAN: For the LAN interface, it includes the LAN port and Wi-Fi networks. You cannot delete this VLAN.
- SFP: For the WAN interface; it includes the SFP port. You can edit or delete this VLAN.

≡ <	Summary			VLAN	
VLAN You can c	reate groups co	onsisting of inter	faces and ports of the ro	uter, for example, for distinguishing different types of traffic.	
VLAN I	List 🕂 🔋	1			
	/LAN ID	Name	Tagged Ports	Untagged ports	
-		LAN	-	DVG-XXX, DVG-XXX-5G, LAN1, LAN2, LAN3, LAN4	
-		SFP	-	SFP	

Figure 167. The Advanced / VLAN page.

In order to add an untagged LAN port or available Wi-Fi networks to an existing or new VLAN, first you need to exclude them from the **LAN** network on this page. To do this, select the **LAN** line. On the opened page, from the **Type** drop-down list of the element corresponding to the LAN port or Wi-Fi network, select the **Excluded** value and click the **APPLY** button.

To create a new VLAN, click the **ADD** button (+).

🗮 < VLAN	VLAN	/Adding	
VLAN Name*		Interface If the "Create Interface" function is disabled, the VLAN operates in the bridge mode and packets passing through it are not tracked. Create interface	
VLAN ID* QoS* 0 Ports			
SFP Type Excluded -	LANA Type Excluded	LAN3 Type Excluded	
LAN2 Type Tagged -	LAN1 Type Excluded	•	
Wireless interfaces			
DVG-XXX Type Excluded	DVG-XXX-5G Type Excluded	•	
APPLY			

Figure 168. The page for adding a VLAN.

You can specify the following parameters:

Parameter	Description
Name	A name for the VLAN for easier identification.
VLAN ID	An identifier of the VLAN.
QoS	A priority tag for the transmitted traffic.
Create interface	Move the switch to the right to create an interface that can be used for creating WAN connections.
	Move the switch to the left for the VLAN to work in the bridge mode. This mode is mostly used to connect IPTV set-top boxes.

Parameter	Description	
	Select a type for each port included in the VLAN.	
	• Untagged : Untagged traffic will be transmitted through the specified port.	
Ports	• Tagged : Tagged traffic will be transmitted through the specified port. If at least one port of this type is included to the VLAN, it is required to fill in the VLAN ID and QoS fields.	
	Leave the Excluded value for the ports not included in the VLAN.	
Wireless interfaces	Select the Untagged value for each Wi-Fi interface included in the VLAN.	
	Leave the Excluded value for the Wi-Fi interfaces not included in the VLAN.	

Click the **APPLY** button.

To edit an existing VLAN, select the relevant line in the table. On the page displayed, change the parameters and click the **APPLY** button.

To remove an existing VLAN, select the checkbox located to the left of the relevant line in the table and click the **DELETE** button ($\boxed{10}$).

WAN Remapping

On the **Advanced / WAN Remapping** page, you can configure the router to connect to a private Ethernet line.

≡	🔇 Summary	WAN Remapping	
Yo ro To	uter is inactive. use the router's LAN port as the WAN p	access the Internet via Ethernet technology. When the function is enabled, the c port, click the icon corresponding to this port and click the Apply button. Ite Ethernet line, click the port icon and click the Apply button.	ptical port of the
	SFP		1
	APPLY		

Figure 169. The Advanced / WAN Remapping page.

To use one of the router's LAN port as the WAN port, click the icon corresponding to this port and click the **APPLY** button. The port configured as the WAN port is highlighted in teal.

If in the future you need to disconnect the LAN port from the private Ethernet line, click the icon highlighted in teal and click the **APPLY** button.

DNS

On the Advanced / DNS page, you can add DNS servers to the system.

≡	< VLAN	D	٩S		
DN ado	VS S servers are used to determine the IP address fro dresses of DNS servers manually or configure the on installing a connection.				:he
IP	<i>v</i> 4		IPv6		
\bigcirc	Manual		_ м	anual	
	Default gateway		💶 De	efault gateway	
Inte	rface		Interface		
sta	atip_81				A
1.1	signed to be used by the local network clients. v4 .1.1 .0.1				
AI	DD SERVER				
	signed to be used by the router when the address	es specifie	d manually o	or obtained automatically are unavailable.	
IP	/4		IPv6		
A	DD SERVER		ADD SER	VER	
	APPLY				

Figure 170. The Advanced / DNS page.

DNS servers are used to determine the IP address from the name of a server in Intranets or the Internet (as a rule, they are specified by an ISP or assigned by a network administrator).

You can specify the addresses of DNS servers manually on this page or configure the router to obtain DNS servers addresses automatically from your ISP upon installing a connection. Also here you can specify addresses of reserve DNS servers which the router can use if the addresses specified manually or obtained automatically are unavailable.

When you use the built-in DHCP server, the network parameters (including DNS servers) are distributed to clients automatically.

Specify needed settings for IPv4 in the **IPv4** section and for IPv6 in the **IPv6** section.

If you want to configure automatic obtainment of DNS servers addresses, move the **Manual** switch to the left. Then move the **Default gateway** switch to the left and from the **Interface** drop-down list select a WAN connection which will be used to obtain addresses of DNS servers automatically. If you want the router to use the default WAN connection to obtain addresses of DNS servers, move the **Default gateway** switch to the right.

To specify a DNS server manually, move the **Manual** switch to the right. In the **Name Servers** section of the relevant IP version, click the **ADD SERVER** button, and in the line displayed, enter an IP address of the DNS server.

To specify a reserve DNS server, in the **Reserve Servers** section of the relevant IP version, click the **ADD SERVER** button, and in the line displayed, enter an IP address of the DNS server.

To remove a DNS server from the page, click the **Delete** button (\boxed{II}) in the line of the address.

When all needed settings are configured, click the **APPLY** button.

DDNS

On the **Advanced / DDNS** page, you can define parameters of the DDNS service, which allows associating a domain name with dynamic IP addresses.

≡	🗙 DNS	DDNS	
	DNS the DDNS page, yo	ou can define parameters of the DDNS service, which allows associating a domain name with dynamic IP addresses	5.
	DNS List	+ eated	

Figure 171. The Advanced / DDNS page.

To add a new DDNS service, click the **ADD** button (+).

😑 < ddns	Add DDNS	
Enable	Username*	
Hostname		
For example: host.ru	× Password*	Ø
ADD HOST	Interface* Default gateway	
DDNS service* changeip.com	Update period (in minutes)* ▼	
SAVE		

Figure 172. The page for adding a DDNS service.

On the opened page, you can specify the following parameters:

Parameter	Description
Enable	Move the switch to the right to enable DDNS.
	Move the switch to the left to disable DDNS.
	Enter the full domain name registered at your DDNS provider.
Hostname	If you want to use another domain name of this DDNS provider, click the ADD HOST button, and in the line displayed, enter the needed value.
	To remove a domain name, click the Delete icon (×) in the line of the name.
DDNS service	Select the DDNS provider from the drop-down list. If your provider is not in the list, select the Custom provider value and fill in the fields displayed on the page. Specify the DDNS provider name in the Name field, the domain name of the provider's server in the Server field, and the location of settings in the Path field.
Username	The username to authorize for your DDNS provider.
Password	The password to authorize for your DDNS provider. Click the Show icon (\bigotimes) to display the entered password.
Interface	From the drop-down list, select a WAN connection which will be used for DDNS, or leave the Default gateway value.
Update period	An interval (in minutes) between sending data on the router's external IP address to the relevant DDNS service.

After specifying the needed parameters, click the **SAVE** button.

To edit parameters of the existing DDNS service, select the relevant line in the table. On the opened page, change the needed parameters and click the **SAVE** button.

To remove an existing DDNS service, select the checkbox located to the left of the relevant line in the table and click the **DELETE** button ($\boxed{10}$).

Ports Settings

On the **Advanced / Ports Settings** page, you can configure or disable autonegotiation of speed and duplex mode or manually configure speed and duplex mode for each Ethernet port of the router.

Also you can enable or disable data flow control in the autonegotiation mode. This function is used for equal load balancing in ISPs' networks. Contact your ISP to clarify if this function needs to be enabled.

📕 🔇 SI	ummary	Ports Setting	gs	٥
Ports S	ettings			
		n of speed and duplex mode or mar data flow control in the autonegot		uplex mode for each Ethernet port
Port	Status	Autonegotiation	Speed	Flow control
SFP	Disconnected	On	-	-
LAN4	Connected	On	1000M-Full	Off
LAN3	Disconnected	On	-	-
LAN2	Connected	On	1000M-Full	Off
LAN1	Disconnected	On	-	-

Figure 173. The Advanced / Ports Settings page.

In order to configure autonegotiation or configure speed and duplex mode manually for an Ethernet port, select it in the table.

Autonegotiation should be enabled for both devices connected to each other.

When autonegotiation is disabled, speed and duplex mode settings for both devices connected to each other should be the same.

LAN1 ×
Speed Auto –
Autonegotiation Modes
1000M-Full
100M-Full
100M-Half
10M-Full
10M-Half
Flow control
Symmetric flow control
SAVE

Figure 174. The window for changing the settings of the router's port.

In the opened window, specify the needed parameters:

Parameter	Description
	Select the Auto value to enable autonegotiation. When this value is selected, the Autonegotiation Modes and Flow control sections are displayed.
	Select the 10M-Half , 10M-Full , 100M-Half , or 100M-Full value to manually configure speed and duplex mode for the selected port.
	• 10M-Half : Data transfer in just one direction at a time (data can be either sent or received) at the maximum possible rate of up to 10Mbps.
Speed	• 10M-Full: Data transfer in two directions simultaneously (data can be sent and received at the same time) at the maximum possible rate of up to 10Mbps.
	• 100M-Half: Data transfer in just one direction at a time (data can be either sent or received) at the maximum possible rate of up to 100Mbps.
	• 100M-Full: Data transfer in two directions simultaneously (data can be sent and received at the same time) at the maximum possible rate of up to 100Mbps.

Parameter Description			
Autonegotiation Modes			
To enable the needed data transfer modes, move relevant switches to the right.			
Flow control			
Symmetric flow control	Move the switch to the right to enable the flow control function for the port.		
Symmetric now control	Move the switch to the left to disable the flow control function for the port.		

After specifying the needed parameters, click the **SAVE** button.

If in the future you need to edit the parameters of the router's port, select the port in the table. In the opened window, change the needed parameters and click the **SAVE** button.

Redirect

On the **Advanced / Redirect** page, you can enable notifications on the reason of the Internet connection failure. Notifications will be displayed in the browser window when a user is attempting to open a web site on the Internet.

Ports Settings	Redirect	
Redirect	tifications on the reason of the Internet connection failure. Notifications will be displayed in the browser window when a user is	
attempting to oper	n a web site on the Internet.	
Reasons for F	connection error	
	ce is not configured	
APPLY		

Figure 175. The Advanced / Redirect page.

To configure notifications, click the **ENABLE** button. Then, in the **Reasons for Redirect** section, move the needed switches to the right.

Parameter	Description				
	Reasons for Redirect				
Physical connection errorNotifications in case of physical connection problems cable is not connected, an additional device needed to Internet is not connected).					
No connection	Notifications in case of problems of the default WAN connection (authorization error, the IPS's server does not respond, etc.).				
The device is not configured	Notifications in case when the device works with default settings.				

When you have configured the parameters, click the **APPLY** button.

To disable notifications, click the **DISABLE** button.

Routing

On the Advanced / Routing page, you can specify static (fixed) routes.

E Configuration	Routing	
Douting		
Routing		
You can specify static (fixed) routes.		
Routes +		
No route created		

Figure 176. The Advanced / Routing page.

To specify a new route, click the **ADD** button (+).

Add Route	×
Enable	
Protocol*	
IPv4	•
Interface*	
Auto	-
Destination network*	
Destination netmask*	
Gateway*	
Metric	
Table*	
group_1	•
SAVE	

Figure 177. The window for adding a new route.

In the opened window, you can specify the following parameters:

Parameter	Description	
Enable	Move the switch to the right to enable the route. Move the switch to the left to disable the route.	
Protocol	An IP version.	
Interface	From the drop-down list, select an interface (connection) through which the device will communicate with the remote network. If you have selected the Auto value, the router itself sets the interface according to the data on the existing dynamic routes.	
Destination network	A remote network which can be accessed with help of this route. You can specify an IPv4 or IPv6 address. The format of a host IPv6 address is 2001:db8:1234::1 , the format of a subnet IPv6 address is 2001:db8:1234::/64 .	
Destination netmask	<i>For IPv4 protocol only.</i> The remote network mask.	
Gateway	An IP address through which the destination network can be accessed.	
Metric	A metric for the route. The lower the value, the higher is the route priority. <i>Optional</i> .	
Table	 From the drop-down list, select a routing table for the route. group_1 table is used to route user traffic. main table is used to route management traffic from internal system services of the router. voip table is used to route VoIP traffic. 	

After specifying the needed parameters, click the **SAVE** button.

To edit an existing route, select a relevant line of the table. In the opened window, change the needed parameters and click the **SAVE** button.

To remove an existing route, select the checkbox located to the left of the relevant line in the table and click the **DELETE** button ($\boxed{10}$).

TR-069 Client

On the **Advanced / TR-069 Client** page, you can configure the router for communication with a remote Auto Configuration Server (ACS).

The TR-069 client is used for remote monitoring and management of the device.

Configuration	TR-069 Client	
TR-069 Client		
You can configure the router for communication with The TR-069 client is used for remote monitoring and		
Enable TR-069 client	Inform Settings	
Interface*	On	
Automatic	Interval (in seconds)	
	120	
Auto Configuration Server Settings	Connection Request Settings	5
Auto Configuration Server Settings		5
	Connection Request Settings	5
Get URL address via DHCP	Connection Request Settings	5
Get URL address via DHCP	Connection Request Settings Username Password Request port	
Get URL address via DHCP	Connection Request Settings Username Password	

Figure 178. The page for configuring the TR-069 client.

You can specify the following parameters:

Parameter	Description	
TR-069 Client		
Enable TR-069 client Move the switch to the right to enable the TR-069 client.		

Parameter	Description
Interface	The interface which the router uses for communication with the ACS. Leave the Automatic value to let the device select the interface basing on the routing table or select another value if required by your ISP.
	Inform Settings
On	Move the switch to the right so the router may send reports (data on the device and network statistics) to the ACS.
Interval	Specify the time period (in seconds) between sending reports.
	Auto Configuration Server Settings
Get URL address via DHCP	If the switch is moved to the right, the router obtains the URL address of the ACS upon establishing the Dynamic IP type connection. If you need to specify the URL address manually, move the switch
	to the left and enter the needed value in the URL address field.
URL address	The URL address of the ACS provided by the ISP.
Username	The username to connect to the ACS.
Password	The password to connect to the ACS. Click the Show icon (\bigotimes) to display the entered password.
	Connection Request Settings
Username	The username used by the ACS to transfer a connection request to the router.
Password	The password used by the ACS. Click the Show icon (\bigotimes) to display the entered password.
Request port	The port used by the ACS. By default, the port 8999 is specified.
Request path	The path used by the ACS.

When you have configured the parameters, click the **APPLY** button.

Port Mirroring

On the **Advanced / Port Mirroring** page, you can enable the function of mirroring the router's ports. This function allows to copy traffic from one or several ports to the destination port to monitor network issues with the help of traffic analysis software.

😑 < Summa	ry	Port Mirror	ing	
	e function of mirroring th	he router's ports. This function allow s with the help of traffic analysis sof	ws to copy traffic from one or several s tware.	ource ports to the
Destination port LAN1 Source port				
None None		LAN2 Mode None -	LAN3 Mode None -	
LAN4 Mode None		SFP Mode None -		
APPLY				

Figure 179. The Advanced / Port Mirroring page.

To enable the function, click the **ENABLE** button. Upon that the following settings are available on the page.

Parameter	Description
Destination port	The port of the router to which a copy of traffic from one or several ports will be sent. Select the relevant value from the drop-down list.

Parameter	Description		
	Select the mode for each port traffic from which should be copied to the destination port:		
	• Both : Copy incoming and outgoing traffic from the source port to the destination port.		
Source port	• TX : Copy outgoing traffic from the source port to the destination port.		
	• RX : Copy incoming traffic from the source port to the destination port.		
	Leave the None value for ports from which it is not required to copy traffic.		

After specifying the needed parameters, click the **APPLY** button.

To disable the function of port mirroring, click the **DISABLE** button.

UPnP

On the **Advanced / UPnP** page, you can enable the UPnP function. The UPnP function allows to automatically create port forwarding rules for applications in the router's LAN requiring a connection from an external network.

🔳 🔇 Sumr	mary	UPn	Ρ		
UPnP You can enable from an extern DISABLE		matically create port forwarding	rules for applications in the ro	uter's LAN requiring a connection	
IPv4					
Protocol	IP address	Private port	Public port	Description	
IPv6					
Protocol	IP address	Private port	Public port	Pinhole ID	

Figure 180. The Advanced / UPnP page.

By default, the UPnP function is enabled. You can also manually add port forwarding rules for network applications on the **Firewall / Virtual Servers** page.

Port forwarding rules will be automatically created only in case the router's default WAN connection uses a public IP address.

When the function is enabled, the following parameters of the router are displayed on the page:

Parameter	Description
	IPv4 / IPv6
Protocol	A protocol for network packet transmission.
IP address	The IP address of a client from the local area network.
Private port	A port of a client's IP address to which traffic is directed from a public port of the router.
Public port	A public port of the router from which traffic is directed to a client's IP address.

User Manual

Parameter	Description
Description	For IPv4 only.
Description	Information transmitted by a client's network application.
	For IPv6 only.
Pinhole ID	An identifier of the rule created by the client for an incoming connection to the router.

If you want to disable the UPnP function, click the **DISABLE** button.

UDPXY

On the **Advanced / UDPXY** page, you can allow the router to use the built-in UDPXY application. The UDPXY application transforms UDP traffic into HTTP traffic. This application allows devices which cannot receive UDP streams to access stream video.

E Configuration	UDPXY	
UDPXY You can allow the router to use the built-in UD allows devices which cannot receive UDP stree	PXY application. The UDPXY application transforms UDP traffic ir ms to access stream video.	nto HTTP traffic. This application
Enable		
Port*	Buffer size for incoming data*	
4022	131071	
Maximum client number*	Buffer size for data transferred to client*	
3	32768	
	WAN interface*	
	Not selected	•
APPLY		

Figure 181. The Advanced / UDPXY page.

To enable the application, move the **Enable** switch to the right.

Upon that the following fields are displayed on the page:

Parameter	Description
Port	The port of the router which the UDPXY application uses.
Maximum client number	Maximum number of devices from the router's LAN which will be served by the application.
Buffer size for incoming	Size of intermediate buffer for received data.
data	By default, the recommended value is specified.
Buffer size for data	Size of intermediate buffer for transmitted data.
transferred to client	By default, the recommended value is specified.
WAN interface	From the drop-down list, select a WAN connection which will be used for operation with streaming video.

After specifying the needed parameters, click the **APPLY** button.

To access the status page of the application, click the **Status** link.

	Server Process ID	Accepting cli	ents on	Multicast address	Active clien
1	18286	192.168.8.254:4	022	192.168.161.191	0
	Request to	emplate		Function	
	http://address:port/udp	•	Relay m	ulticast traffic from mca	st addr:mport
	http://address:port/status/		-	udpxy status	
	http://address:port/restart/		Restart	udpxy	

Figure 182. The UDPXY application status page.

IGMP

On the Advanced / IGMP page, you can allow the router to use IGMP.

IGMP is used for managing multicast traffic (transferring data to a group of destinations). This protocol allows using network resources for some applications, e.g., for streaming video, more efficiently.

IGMP Internet Group Management Protocol is designed to manage multicast traffic in IP-based networks.	
Enable	
IGMP version	
IGMPv2	
Interface*	
statip_96 👻	
APPLY	

Figure 183. The Advanced / IGMP page.

The following elements are available on the page:

Parameter	Description	
	IGMP	
Enable	Move the switch to the right to enable IGMP.	
IGMP version	Select a version of IGMP from the drop-down list.	
Interface	From the drop-down list, select a connection of the Dynamic IPv4 or Static IPv4 type for which you need to allow multicast traffic (e.g. streaming video).	

After specifying the needed parameters, click the **APPLY** button.

ALG/Passthrough

On the **Advanced / ALG/Passthrough** page, you can enable the RTSP, SIP ALG mechanisms, and PPPoE/PPTP/L2TP/IPsec pass through functions.

SIP is used for creating, modifying, and terminating communication sessions. This protocol allows telephone calls via the Internet.

RTSP is used for real-time streaming multimedia data delivery. This protocol allows some applications to receive streaming audio/video from the Internet.

The PPPoE pass through function allows PPPoE clients of computers from your LAN to connect to the Internet through connections of the router.

The PPTP pass through, L2TP pass through and IPsec pass through functions allow VPN PPTP, L2TP and IPsec traffic to pass through the router so that clients from your LAN can establish relevant connections with remote networks.

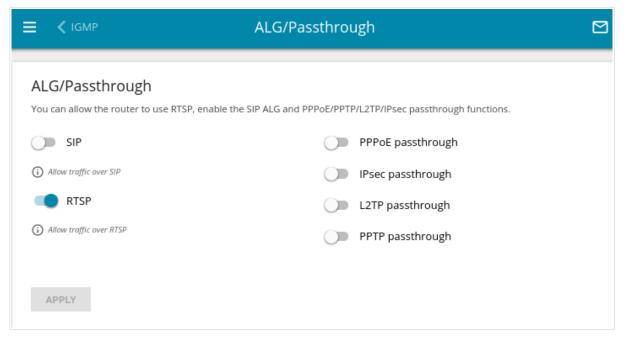


Figure 184. The Advanced / ALG/Passthrough page.

The following elements are available on the page:

Parameter	Description	
SIP	Move the switch to the right to enable SIP. Such a setting allows using the SIP ALG function. This function allows VoIP traffic to pass through the NAT-enabled router. ¹⁷	
RTSP	Move the switch to the right to enable RTSP. Such a setting allows managing media stream: fast forward streaming audio/video, pause and start it.	
PPPoE pass through	Move the switch to the right to enable the PPPoE pass through function.	
IPsec pass through	Move the switch to the right to enable the IPsec pass through function.	
L2TP pass through	Move the switch to the right to enable the L2TP pass through function.	
PPTP pass through	Move the switch to the right to enable the PPTP pass through function.	

After specifying the needed parameters, click the **APPLY** button.

¹⁷ On the **Connections Setup / WAN** page, create a WAN connection, move the **SIP** switch to the right on the **Advanced / ALG/Passthrough** page, connect an Ethernet cable between a LAN port of the router and the IP phone. Specify SIP parameters on the IP phone and configure it to obtain an IP address automatically (as DHCP client).

CoovaChilli

The CoovaChilli service provides authorized Internet access for clients in your corporate or public network. On the **Advanced / CoovaChilli** page, you can add an authorization server.

Configuration	CoovaChilli	
	(\pm)	
	No server created	
	You can add a server	
	ADD	

Figure 185. The Advanced / CoovaChilli page.

To add an authorization server, click the **ADD** button (+). On the opened page, move the **Enable** switch to the right to enable the CoovaChilli service.

	There are no interfaces available for CoovaChilli
() If you	i want to use a separate LAN port or a Wi-Fi network as the interface
it is neces	sary to create another VLAN group for this port or network.
Lease time	e (in seconds)
86400	
Logging le	vel
Error m	nessages -
IP addr	ess*
Mask*	

Figure 186. The page for adding an authorization server. The **Main Settings** section.

•		
Parameter	Description	
	From the drop-down list, select an interface to be used for the authorization server.	
Interface	A VLAN which includes a separate LAN port or a Wi-Fi network (see the VLAN section, page 224) is used as an interface for the server.	
Lease time	The interval (in seconds) between sending authorization requests to clients.	
Logging level	Select a type of messages and alerts/notifications to be logged.	
IP address	Specify an IP address of the router to be used for authorized client access.	
Mask	Specify a subnet mask.	
Ping	If the switch is moved to the right, the router responds to ping requests by the IP address specified on this page. For security reasons, it is recommended to disable this function.	
	DADIUS server	

In the Main Settings section, you can specify the following parameters:

RADIUS server

Secondary RADIUS server address	
RADIUS encryption key*	No.
RADIUS server port	
1813	
Authentication port	
1812	

Figure 187. The page for adding an authorization server. The **RADIUS server** section.

In the **RADIUS server** section, you can specify the following parameters:

Parameter	Description
Primary RADIUS server address / Secondary RADIUS server address	Enter addresses of the primary and secondary RADIUS servers in the relevant fields.

Parameter	Description		
RADIUS encryption key	The password which the router uses for communication with the RADIUS server (the value of this parameter is specified in the RADIUS server settings). Click the Show icon (\bigotimes) to display the entered password.		
RADIUS server port	A port of the RADIUS server.		
Authentication port	The number of a router port which will be used to connect to the RADIUS server. By default, the value 1812 is specified.		
NASID	A network access server ID (the value of this parameter is specified in the RADIUS server settings).		
	MAC authentication Enable Password		

Figure 188. The page for adding an authorization server. The **MAC authentication** section.

In the **MAC authentication**¹⁸ section, you can specify the following parameters:

Suffix

Parameter	Description	
Enable	MAC authentication allows the RADIUS server to authorize clients by their MAC addresses. Move the switch to the right to enable MAC authentication.Move the switch to the left to disable MAC authentication.	
Password	If required, specify the password to authenticate clients by their MAC addresses. Click the Show icon (()) to display the entered password.	
Suffix	Specify a suffix for anonymous MAC authentication.	

¹⁸ Will be available in future software versions.

Enable CHAP authentication	
() If the switch is moved to the left, PAP authentication is used	
Authorization port 3990	
UAM encryption key*	Ø
() The key length cannot exceed 64 characters	
UAM server*	
UAM server* The address of the UAM server should start with a protocol. Example the typ://dlink.ru	mple:
① The address of the UAM server should start with a protocol. Example:	mple:

Figure 189. The page for adding an authorization server. The **UAM** section.

In the **UAM** section, you can specify the following parameters:

Parameter	Description
Enable CHAP authentication	Move the switch to the right to enable CHAP authentication.
	Move the switch to the left to enable PAP authentication (the value of this parameter is specified in the RADIUS server settings).
Authorization port	The number of a router port which will be used for UAM server authorization. By default, the value 3990 is specified.
UAM encryption key	Specify the UAM authentication encryption key. Click the Show icon (∞) to display the entered key.
UAM server	Specify the URL of the UAM server which ensures client authorization. The address of the UAM server should start with a protocol. Example: http://dlink.ru
Access for unauthorized users	Specify the list of resources (separated by a comma) which unauthorized users are allowed to access. Please specify a site address and a port. Example: dlink.ru:80

After specifying the needed parameters, click the **APPLY** button.

After adding an authorization server, on the **Advanced / CoovaChilli** page, in the **Status** section, the current state of the server connection is displayed.

To edit the parameters of a server, left-click the relevant line in the table. On the opened page, change the needed parameters and click the **APPLY** button.

To remove a server, select the checkbox located to the left of the relevant line in the table and click the **DELETE** button ($\boxed{10}$).

VolP

In this menu you can configure all parameters essential for VoIP via SIP and specify all needed settings for the phone connected to the router.

Home

On the **VoIP** / **Home** page you can enable VoIP and manage profiles.

	Home		
Home			
You can enable VoIP and manage prof	files.		
Enable VoIP			
Interface type WAN group	.		
Local SIP port* 5060			
Profile List 🕂 🗊			
Name	DHCP option 120	Status	
Voice profile	Enabled	Disabled	
APPLY			

Figure 190. The VoIP / Home page.

To enable VoIP, move the **Enable VoIP** switch to the right. You can specify the following parameters:

Parameter	Description
	The type of network interface for VoIP. Select the needed value from the drop-down list.
Interface type	• Connection : The selected WAN connection serves as the interface for VoIP.
	• WAN group : The default WAN connection is used as the interface for VoIP.

User M	lanual
--------	--------

Parameter	Description
Bound interface name	From the drop-down list, select a WAN connection for VoIP. The list is displayed if the Connection value is selected from the Interface type drop-down list.
Local SIP port	A port of the router for outbound SIP traffic. Unless another setting is given by your ISP, it is recommended to leave the default value (5060).

In the **Profile List** section, the list of existing profiles with their status is displayed.

```
To create a new profile, click the ADD button (+).
```

Profile	×
Enable	
Enable DHCP option 120	
Name*	
Voice profile	

Figure 191. The window for adding a profile.

In the opened window, you can specify the following parameters:

Parameter	Description
Enable	Move the switch to the right to enable the profile.
Ellable	Move the switch to the left to disable the profile.
Enchle DUCD ontion	Move the switch to the right to allow using DHCP option 120.
Enable DHCP option 120	Move the switch to the left if your provider does not require automatic obtainment of the SIP proxy server address.
Name	The name of the profile for easier identification. You can specify any name.

When all needed settings are configured, click the **SAVE** button.

To edit an existing profile, in the **Profile List** section, select the relevant line in the table. In the opened window, change the needed parameters and click the **SAVE** button.

To remove an existing profile, select the checkbox located to the left of the relevant line in the table and click the **DELETE** button ($\boxed{10}$).

When all needed settings are configured, click the **APPLY** button.

Advanced Settings

On the VoIP / Advanced Settings page, you can specify additional settings for VoIP.

😑 🔇 Summary		Advanced Settings
Advanced Set	tings Ional settings for VoIP.	
Locale selection RU		Record to USB
Replace # v		() Logs are exported in CSV format
SIP transport protocol	ort	•
NAT Traversal		Marking DSCP
Mode		RTP DSCP
Disabled		✓ 0
		SIP DSCP
		0
Port List		
Name	Flash time, ms	Caller ID
phone 1	80 - 1000	FSK BELLCORE
phone 2	80 - 1000	FSK BELLCORE
APPLY		

Figure 192. The VoIP / Advanced Settings page.

Parameter	Description
Locale selection	Select your country from the drop-down list. This setting defines the parameters of the phone signals traditional for the specific country.
Replace # with %23	RFC3261 doesn't support # (pound) for a phone number. If a phone number has the character, move the switch to the right to replace the character # with the special sequence %23.

Parameter	Description
Support rport	Move the switch to the right to enable the Symmetric Response Routing function in accordance with RFC3581. This function allows sending responses to a request to the port and IP address from which the request was received via the NAT-enabled router. The SIP proxy server must support the function.
SIP transport protocol	Transport protocol that will be used to transfer SIP packets. Select the needed value from the drop-down list.
	Record to USB
Save log to a USB storage	Move the switch to the right to save the call log to a USB storage connected to the router. Upon that the Path and File name fields are displayed on the page.
Path	Click the Search icon (\mathbf{Q}) located to the right of the field in order to locate the folder where call log files will be stored.
File name	A name for call log files.
	NAT Traversal
	The NAT Traversal function allows VoIP traffic to pass through the NAT-enabled router.
	Select the Disabled value to disable the function.
Mode	Select the STUN value to enable the STUN client (<i>Session Traversal Utilities for NAT</i>). The STUN client sends requests to a STUN server. On the basis of the received replies, the client allows VoIP traffic to pass through the NAT-enabled router. When this value is selected, the Server address , Port , and Binding period fields are displayed.
	Select the NAT Public IP value to manually specify a public ("white") IP address of an upper-level router which exchanges service messages with the SIP proxy server. When this value is selected, the Public address and Port fields are displayed.
Server address	An IP or URL address of a STUN server to which a connection is established.
Public address	A public ("white") IP address of an upper-level router which exchanges service messages with the SIP proxy server.

Parameter	Description	
	If the STUN value is selected from the Mode drop-down list, a port of a STUN server to which a connection is established is displayed. By default, the port 3478 is specified.	
Port	If the NAT Public IP value is selected from the Mode drop-down list, a port of an upper-level router which exchanges service messages with the SIP proxy server is displayed. By default, the port 5060 is specified.	
Binding period	The time interval between service messages (in seconds). Specify a needed value.	
Marking DSCP		
	Differentiated Services Codepoint.	
RTP DSCP / SIP DSCP	Specify the required tags for DSCP traffic marking to change voice traffic priority. The function should be supported by your ISP.	

In the **Port List** section, you can change parameters of the FXS ports of the router. To do this, select the corresponding line in the table.

phone 1	×
Flash time minimum (in milliseconds) 80	
Flash time maximum (in milliseconds)	
Caller ID	
Caller ID Before the first call	
	·
Before the first call Detection mode	•

Figure 193. The window to change FXS port parameters.

In the opened window, you can specify the following parameters:

Parameter	Description
Flash time minimum / Flash time maximum	The maximum and minimum value for flash time (the user hangs up the receiver and lifts it again) in milliseconds which the router will regard as pressing the FLASH key.

Parameter Description			
Caller ID			
Before the first call	Move the switch to the right to deliver a phone number to the phones connected to the FXS ports of the router before the first phone ring when receiving an incoming call.		
Detection mode	From the drop-down list, select an operation mode of the automatic caller identification function for the phones connected to the FXS ports of the router.		
	To disable the automatic caller identification function for the phones connected to the FXS ports of the router, select the Do not use value from the drop-down list.		

Click the **SAVE** button.

When all needed settings are configured, click the **APPLY** button.

Rings

On the VolP / Rings page, you can configure ring signal parameters.

Advanced Settings	Rings	
Rings You can configure ring signal parameters.		
Rings List 🕂 🗊		
Name	Signals	
Default	2000/4000	

Figure 194. The VoIP / Rings page.

To add a new ring, in the **Rings List** section, click the **ADD** button (+).

≡ < Rings	Rings/Adding	
Rings You can configure ring signal parameters.		
Name*		
Signal List 🕂 🗊		
Signal length (in milliseconds)	Pause length (in milliseconds)	
APPLY		

Figure 195. The page for adding a ring.

On the opened page, specify a ring name in the **Name** field for easier identification.

To specify the signal parameters for a ring, in the **Signal List** section click the **ADD** button (+).

User Manual

Signal length (in milliseconds)*	
1000	
Pause length (in milliseconds)*	
1000	

Figure 196. The window for specifying signal parameters.

In the opened window, fill in the **Signal length** and **Pause length** fields. For each ring, you can specify several variants of signal and pause length in milliseconds which will be used cyclically in the order of their appearance on the page.

Click the **SAVE** button.

To edit the parameters of a signal, in the **Signal List** section, select the corresponding line in the table. In the opened window, change the needed parameters and click the **SAVE** button.

When all needed settings are configured, click the **APPLY** button.

To edit the parameters of a ring, in the **Rings List** section, select the corresponding line in the table. On the displayed page, change the needed parameters and click the **APPLY** button.

To remove an existing ring, select the checkbox located to the left of the relevant line in the table and click the **DELETE** button ($\boxed{10}$).

Security

On the **VoIP / Security** page, you can configure filtering rules for incoming calls of the phones connected to the FXS ports of the router.

≡	🗸 Adding	Security	
	CURITY I can configure filtering rules for incoming calls of the pho	nes connected to the FXS ports of the router.	
Filt	tering Policy	List of IP Addresses/Domains	
0	White list	ADD	
0	Black list		
	APPLY		

Figure 197. The VoIP / Security page.

In the Filtering Policy section, select the needed choice of the radio button.

- White list: The router accepts incoming calls only from IP addresses or domains specified in the List of IP Addresses/Domains section.
- **Black list**: The router accepts incoming calls from any IP addresses or domains except for those specified in the **List of IP Addresses/Domains** section.

To add an IP address or domain name, click the **ADD** button in the **List of IP Addresses/Domains** section. In the line displayed, specify the needed value.

To remove an IP address or domain name from the list, click the **Delete** icon (\times) in the relevant line.

After specifying the needed parameters, click the **APPLY** button.

Alarm Clock

On the **VoIP / Alarm Clock** page, you can configure the phones connected to the FXS ports of the router as alarm clocks.

😑 < Summary	Alarm	l Clock	
Alarm Clock You can configure the phones connected to the FXS ports of as alarm clocks. (i) When the router is powered off or rebooted, the system time is clock of the device will be configured after connecting to the Internet	reset to the defau	Time 13:14 It value. If you have set automatic synchronization for the system time, the intern he system time manually, you need to set the time and date again.	al
Line 1 Enable alarm clock		Line 2 Enable alarm clock	
Hours O	P	Hours O	
Minutes O	A	Minutes O	
Ring time (in seconds) 30	A	Ring time (in seconds) 30	6
APPLY			

Figure 198. The VoIP / Alarm Clock page.

In the Line 1 and/or Line 2 section, move the Enable alarm clock switch to the right. Then specify the time at which the phone should ring in the Hour and Minutes fields. In the Ring time field, specify the signal duration. Then click the APPLY button.

When the router is powered off or rebooted, the system time is reset to the default value.

If you have set automatic synchronization for the system time, the internal clock of the device will be configured after connecting to the Internet. If you have set the system time

manually, you need to set the time and date again.

Profile Settings

In this menu section, you can do the following for your profile (**Voice profile** is created by default):

- configure basic and advanced profile settings for VoIP over SIP
- configure calls on events
- specify settings of data receipt/transfer for the fax machine
- configure audio parameters, volume and voice codecs
- configure speed dial parameters and dialplan settings
- specify call log parameters.

Basic Settings

On the **VoIP / Profile Name / Basic Settings** page, you can configure basic profile settings for VoIP over SIP.

🔇 Security	Basic Settings	
Basic Settings You can configure all needed settings for V	oIP via SIP.	
SIP Proxy	Backup SIP Proxy	SIP Domain
Address*	Address	Use domain to register
Port* 5060	Port 5060	SIP domain name
SIP Outbound Proxy	Unregister when switching Allow call without registra	
Address	_ Backup route	Local RTP port (maximum)
Port 5060	Backup route port 5060	9100 A
	Backup SIP Outbound Prox	у
	Address	
	Port 5060	
APPLY		

Figure 199. The VoIP / Profile Name / Basic Settings page.

Parameter	Description		
	SIP Proxy		
Address	An IP or URL address of the SIP proxy server.		
Port	A port of the SIP proxy server. Unless another setting is given by your ISP, it is recommended to leave the default value (5060).		

Parameter	Description		
	SIP Outbound Proxy		
Address	An IP or URL address of the SIP outbound proxy server.		
Port	A port of the SIP outbound proxy server. Unless another setting is given by your ISP, it is recommended to leave the default value (5060).		
	Backup SIP Proxy		
Address	An IP or URL address of the backup SIP proxy server. The router uses the backup SIP proxy server in case of no response from the main SIP proxy server.		
Port	A port of the backup SIP proxy server. Unless another setting is given by your ISP, it is recommended to leave the default value (5060).		
Unregister when switching	If the switch is moved to the right, upon switching between the main SIP proxy server and the backup SIP proxy server and backwards, the router unregisters on the current registration server by sending special SIP packets in order to complete the registration session before it expires.		
	If the switch is moved to the left, upon switching between the main SIP proxy server and the backup SIP proxy server and backwards, the router stays registered until the registration session expires.		
Allow call without registration	Move the switch to the right to allow calls without registration on the main SIP proxy server.		
Backup route	An IP or URL address to which calls will be forwarded if the main or backup SIP proxy servers are unavailable.		
Backup route port	A port of the backup route. Unless another setting is given by your ISP, it is recommended to leave the default value (5060).		
Backup SIP Outbound Proxy			
Address	An IP or URL address of the backup SIP outbound proxy server. The router uses the backup SIP outbound proxy server in case of no response from the main SIP outbound proxy server.		
Port	A port of the backup SIP outbound proxy server. Unless another setting is given by your ISP, it is recommended to leave the default value (5060).		

Parameter	Description			
	SIP Domain			
Use domain to register	Move the switch to the right if your ISP requires to specify a domain name upon registration on the SIP proxy server. Then fill in the SIP domain name field.			
SIP domain name	When this field is filled in, the router registers on the SIP proxy server using the specified domain name. When the field is blank, the router uses the IP address assigned to it.			
Misc				
Local RTP port (minimum / maximum) A range of ports for voice traffic receipt/transfer via RTF another setting is given by your ISP, it is recommended to default value (9000 and 9100).				
DNS Interface	Select the interface which will be used for domain name resolution in VoIP. Leave the Follow VoIP value if changing the interface for domain name resolution is not required.			

Also on this page, you can specify incoming/outgoing call settings for the SIP lines.

List of SIP Lines	+ 🗉				
SIP ID / Number		Username	Ports	Status	
Line 1		-		Disabled	

Figure 200. The VolP / Profile Name / Basic Settings. The List of SIP Lines section.

To change parameters of a SIP line, select the relevant line in the table.

E K Basic Settings	Editing			
General	DND		Forwarding	
Enable	DND		On busy	
Port phone 1	DND on schedule		D Enable	
SIP ID / Number*	Time period(HH:MM-HH:MM) 00:00-00:00		Call forwarding number	
Username	Session Control		If no answer Enable	
	Enable session control		Call forwarding number	A
Password 🔌	R Transfer code		Number of calls	0
PIN code to dial	Advanced management		о 	F
Enable Display name	Attended transfer		Always	
Display name	Alert transfer		Call forwarding number	A
	Hotline			
Advanced	D Enable hotline			
Anonymous call blocking	Number	A		
Anonymous calling	Connect after (seconds) 3			
APPLY				

Figure 201. The page for editing SIP line settings.

On the opened page, you can specify the following parameters:

Parameter	Description	
General		
Enable	Move the switch to the right to enable the SIP line.	
Port	Choose the FXS port to associate it with the line. If no port is selected, the line will be inactive.	
SIP ID / Number	A number for this line. The called party sees the specified value as the caller number.	
Username	A username for this line which is used to authorize on SIP proxy server. For most SIP proxy servers the username coincides with the phone number.	

Parameter	Description	
Password	A user password for this line.	
PIN code to dial	Fill in the field to allow the user of the phone to make calls only after dialing the PIN code.	
Enable Display name	Move the switch to the right to enable transfer of the caller's name for outgoing calls.	
Display name	The name of the caller which will be displayed to the called party.	
	Advanced	
Call waiting	Move the switch to the right to accept incoming calls when the line is busy. To switch between calls, press the FLASH key on the phone.	
Anonymous call blocking	Move the switch to the right to reject calls when the calling party conceals its number.	
Anonymous calling	Move the switch to the right to conceal your number from the called party.	
	DND	
DND	<i>Do Not Disturb</i> . Move the switch to the right to reject all incoming calls (the busy tone will be heard).	
DND on schedule	Move the switch to the right to reject all incoming calls at a certain time of day. If the switch is moved to the right, the Time period field is available. Specify the needed period as HH:MM-HH:MM , where HH:MM is time in 24-hour format.	
	Session Control	
Enable session control	Move the switch to the right to enable session control. Upon that you will be able to manage voice sessions during a call with the help of the FLASH key on your phone. (The function should be supported by your ISP).	
Transfer code	Feature code for transferring a call to another phone.	

Parameter	Description	
	Move the switch to the right to use combination of the FLASH key and keys of the phone in order to organize three-party calls, manage sessions and calls.	
	By default, each action is assigned to a certain key of the phone set. To change this value, in the line corresponding to the action, select the needed value from the drop-down list.	
	Use of FLASH key	
Advanced management	• The function is enabled. The phone connected to this line has an incoming call in the standby mode and an outgoing call in the talk mode. It's needed to press the FLASH key, hear the dial tone, and then press the key corresponding to your action.	
	• The function is not enabled. The phone connected to this line has an incoming call in the standby mode and an outgoing call in the talk mode. It's needed:	
	• to press the FLASH key in order to put the second call on hold and continue the first call,	
	• to hang up the receiver in order to end both calls and connect the first and second speakers to each other.	
Attended transfer	Move the switch to the right if you want to transfer calls when a called party's receiver is lifted.	
Alert transfer	Move the switch to the right if you want to transfer calls when a dial tone is heard.	
	Hotline	
Enable hotline	Move the switch to the right to make the phone connected to this line dial the number specified in the Number field after the receiver is lifted.	
Number	A number dialed by the phone connected to this line after the receiver is lifted. Also you can specify a number in the format phone_number@IP_address for direct IP calls bypassing the SIP proxy server. The field is available for editing if the Enable hotline switch is moved to the right.	
Connect after	A time period (in seconds) between lifting up the receiver and dialing the hotline number. The field is available for editing if the Enable hotline switch is moved to the right.	

Parameter Description		
Forwarding		
Enable	In the corresponding sections, move the Enable switch to the right to enable forwarding always, on busy, or if there is no answer. When the switch is moved to the right, the Call forwarding number and Number of calls fields are available for editing. Move the corresponding switch to the left if forwarding is not required.	
Call forwarding number		
Number of calls	The number of calls before the router forwards a call to the number specified in the Call forwarding number field. The field is available for editing if the Enable switch in the If no answer section is moved to the right.	

After specifying the needed parameters, click the **APPLY** button.

To add a new line, in the **List of SIP Lines** section, click the **ADD** button (+). On the opened page, specify the needed parameters and click the **APPLY** button.

Call on Event

On the VolP / Profile Name / Call on Event page, you can configure calls on different events.

Celting	Call on Event	
Call on Event		
You can configure calls on different events.		
List of SIP Lines		
SIP ID / Number	Username	
1		

Figure 202. The VolP / Profile Name / Call on Event page.

To change parameters of a SIP line, select the relevant line in the table.

Call on Event	Editing		
Call on Event You can configure calls on different events.			
Event List 🕂 🗊			
Event	Condition	Ring	
Default	-	Default	
TextMessage	-	Default	
Alarm	-	Default	
APPLY			

Figure 203. The page for call editing.

In the **Event List** section, the list of existing events and their parameters are displayed.

To create a new event, click the **ADD** button (+).

Adding	×
Event	
CallerID	•
Phone*	
Ring	

Figure 204. The window for adding an event.

In the opened window, you can specify the following parameters:

Parameter	Description
	Select the needed value from the drop-down list.
Event	• AlertInfo: Allows to change the phone ring type according to special ISP's data specified in the Template field.
	• CallerID : Allows to change the phone ring type according to special ISP's data specified in the Phone field.
Phone	The phone number of the calling party. Contact your ISP to clarify the number format. The field is displayed if the CallerID value is selected in the Event drop-down list.
Template	The value of CallerID information field transmitted by your ISP in SIP packets. Contact your ISP to clarify the template format. The field is displayed if the AlertInfo value is selected in the Event drop-down list.
Ring	Select a ring for the event from the drop-down list.

After specifying the needed parameters, click the **SAVE** button.

To edit the parameters of an existing event, in the **Event List** section, select the corresponding line in the table. In the opened window, change the needed parameters and click the **SAVE** button.

To remove an existing event, select the checkbox located to the left of the relevant line in the table

and click the **DELETE** button ($\overline{\square}$). Only events created by the user can be deleted.

After specifying the needed parameters, click the **APPLY** button.

Additional Settings

On the **VoIP / Profile Name / Additional Settings** page you can configure additional profile settings for VoIP over SIP.

C Editing	Additional Settings		
Additional Settings			
You can specify additional settings for Vo	bIP via SIP.		
Common Settings	Telephone Event Relay	Jitter Buffer	
Support PRACK	DTMF relay setting InBand	Delay (in milliseconds) 40 	
Registration	Content-Type for DTMF application/dtmf-relay	Maximal delay (in milliseconds) • 100	
Registration expire timeout (in seconds)* 1800	Flash relay setting	Factor	
Registration retry interval (in seconds)*	Follow DTMF	✓ 7 (recommended)	•
Session expires (in seconds)*	Follow DTMF	 Timeout Settings 	
1800 Session refresher	RTP Redundancy	Waiting for first digit (in seconds) 30	
Auto	Codec None	Dial delay time (in seconds) 5	
Session update method UPDATE	 Payload type 	BusyTone timeout (in seconds)	
NAT	121	HowlerTone timeout (in seconds)	
NAT keep alive		60	
NAT support interval (in seconds)* 60		RTCP	
		Send RTCP	
		Sending interval (in seconds)* 1	
APPLY			

Figure 205. The VolP / Profile Name / Additional Settings page.

Parameter	Description	
Common Settings		
Support PRACK	Move the switch to the right to enable the PRACK method (<i>Provisional Response ACKnowledgement</i>). The PRACK method provides reliable transmission of packets with provisional responses to an initiating request upon setting a session in accordance with RFC3262.	
	Registration	
Registration expire timeout	A time period (in seconds) after which the router changes the registration status in case of no response from the SIP proxy server.	
Registration retry interval	A time period (in seconds) after which the registration will be repeated.	
Session expires	A time period (in seconds) between attempts to check the status of the voice session.	
	From the drop-down list, select the preferred choice of checking the Internet connection state during the voice session.	
Session refresher	• Local : The router sends special SIP packets for checking the Internet connection state.	
	• Remote : The SIP proxy server sends special SIP packets for checking the Internet connection state.	
	• Auto : The SIP proxy server defines which party checks the Internet connection state.	
Session update method	The voice session update method. Contact your ISP to clarify which value needs to be selected.	
	NAT	
NAT keep alive	Move the switch to the right to allow the router to support the state of automatically forwarded ports by periodic exchange of service messages. If the switch is moved to the right, the NAT support interval field is available for editing.	
NAT support interval	The time interval (in seconds) between service messages. Specify the needed value.	

Parameter	Description	
Telephone Event Relay		
DTMF relay setting	From the drop-down list, select a mode for DTMF signal transmission.	
	 InBand: Transmission with voice data. RFC2833: Transmission in accordance with RFC2833. SIPInfo: Transmission in the relevant SIP messages. 	
Content-Type for DTMF	Select DTMF data type from the drop-down list.	
	The mode for signal transmission upon pressing the FLASH key.	
	• Follow DTMF: Transmission in the mode selected for DTMF signal transmission.	
Flash relay setting	• InBand : Transmission with voice data.	
	• RFC2833 : Transmission in accordance with RFC2833.	
	• SIPInfo : Transmission in the relevant SIP messages.	
Content-Type for Flash	In the drop-down list, select the data type to be transferred upon pressing the FLASH key.	
Payload type for RFC	Select RFC2833 data type.	
2833	The field is displayed if the RFC2833 value is selected in the DTMF relay setting drop-down list.	
RTP Redundancy		
Codec	The RTP Redundancy function allows restoring a part of lost RTP packets while transmitting audio data.	
	From the drop-down list, select a codec to which the function should be applied.	
	To disable the function, select the None value from the drop-down list.	
Payload type	Payload data type.	

Parameter	Description		
Jitter Buffer			
Delay / Maximal delay	The Jitter Buffer parameter improves the quality of voice transmission: received voice packets are specially delayed, which allows their reproducing in the order they were sent from the transmitting side.		
	Specify the minimal and maximal packets waiting period (in milliseconds) in the relevant fields.		
Factor	This parameter enhances efficiency of jitter buffer operation. When the minimal value is selected, the delay value will tend to be lower. Select the relevant value from the drop-down list.		
	Timeout Settings		
Waiting for first digit	The delay time before the first digit is dialed (in seconds). Specify the required value.		
Dial delay time	The delay time before the next digit is dialed (from 3 to 9 seconds). When this time expires, the router regards that the dialing is completed and makes the call.		
BusyTone timeout	Busy tone duration (in seconds).		
HowlerTone timeout	Howler tone duration (in seconds).		
	RTCP		
	Real-Time Transport Control Protocol.		
Send RTCP	Move the switch to the right to allow sending RTCP packets. RTCP packets exchange allows receiving statistics on RTP packets delivery.		
Sending interval	Specify the time period (in seconds) between sending packets.		

After specifying the needed parameters, click the **APPLY** button.

Fax Settings

On the **VoIP / Profile Name / Fax Settings** page, you can specify settings of data receipt/transfer for the fax machines connected to the FXS ports of the router.

E 🖌 Additional Settings	Fax Settings	E
Fax Settings		
You can specify settings of data receipt/transfer for	the fax machines connected to the FXS ports of the router.	
T.38	Fax/Modem Passthrough	
Enable T.38 support	Enable fax/modem	
Fax/Modem determination	Auto	
AUTO_2	 Codec type 	
-	Auto	•
Enable custom parameters	Payload type*	
Custom Parameters T.38	102	
Maximal buffer (in bytes)*		
500		
Rate management (TCF) Network	•	
Maximal rate (in bauds)		
14400	•	
Error correction mode		
ECC signal		
5	<u></u>	
ECC data		
2		
Enable spoofing		
Duplicate number*		
0		
APPLY		

Figure 206. The VolP / Profile Name / Fax Settings page.

Parameter	Description
	Т.38
Enable T.38 support	Move the switch to the right to allow support of the T.38 protocol. If the switch is moved to the right, the Fax/Modem determination drop-down list and the Enable custom parameters switch are displayed on the page.
Fax/Modem determination	From the drop-down list, select a mode of fax/modem signal detection.

Parameter	Description
Enable custom parameters	Move the switch to the right to specify additional parameters for T.38 protocol. Upon that the Custom Parameters T.38 section is displayed on the page.
	Custom Parameters T.38
Maximal buffer	The maximum buffer size (in bytes) for data received by the router.
Rate management (TCF)	From the drop-down list, select a method for facsimile data transfer rate management: Local or Network .
Maximal rate	From the drop-down list, select the maximum rate for facsimile data receipt/transfer (in bauds).
Error correction mode	Move the switch to the right to enable the error correction mode. When the switch is moved to the right, the ECC signal and ECC data fields are available for editing.
Enable spoofing	Move the switch to the right to let the router simulate facsimile data receipt/transfer in case of delays.
Duplicate number	Specify the number of packet duplications.
	Fax/Modem Passthrough
Enable fax/modem	From the drop-down list, select the Auto value to enable the Fax Passthrough and Modem Passthrough mechanisms. To disable the mechanisms, select the Disable value.
Codec type	From the drop-down list, select a codec for data transfer.
Payload type	Payload data type.

When all needed settings are configured, click the **APPLY** button.

Audio Settings

On the **VoIP / Profile Name / Audio Settings** page, you can configure audio parameters, volume and voice codecs.

Fax Settings	Audio Set	tings		
Audio Settings You can configure audio parameters, volum	e and voice codecs.			
List of SIP Lines				
SIP ID / Number	Username	Speaker	Microphone	
1	-	0 dB	0 dB	

Figure 207. The VoIP / Profile Name / Audio Settings page.

To change the parameters for a SIP line, select the relevant line in the table.

🗙 Audio Settings	Editing	
Audio Settings You can configure audio parameters, volume and voice codec	S.	
CNG VAD	Echo Cancellation Characteria Enable echo cancellation Echo duration (in milliseconds)* 4 Advanced Codecs Settings iLBC mode 20ms	-
Olume Settings (i) The possible field values from -32 to 31 (dB)		
Speaker* 0	Microphone* 0	

Figure 208. The page for audio settings for a SIP line.

On the opened page, you can specify the following parameters:

Parameter	Description		
Audio Settings			
CNG	Comfort Noise Generation.		
	Move the switch to the right to enable the function.		
VAD	Voice Activity Detection.		
VAD	Move the switch to the right to enable the function.		
	Echo Cancellation		
Enable echo cancellation	Move the switch to the right to enable the echo cancellation function.		
Echo duration	Specify the maximum echo duration (in milliseconds).		
	Advanced Codecs Settings		
	Internet Low Bitrate Codec.		
	The value of the field specifies the operation mode of the codec. Select the needed value from the drop-down list.		
iLBC mode	• 20ms : The speech signal transfer rate is 15.20Kbps for 20ms frames.		
	• 30ms : The speech signal transfer rate is 13.33Kbps for 30ms frames.		
	Volume Settings		
Speaker	Specify the earphone volume for the phone connected to this SIP line.		
Microphone	Specify the microphone sensitivity for the phone connected to this SIP line.		

Codecs Settings				
Codec	State	Priority	Period of packetization	
G.711MuLaw	On	1	20	
G.711ALaw	On	2	20	
G.726-16	On	3	20	
G.726-24	Off	4	20	
G.726-32	On	5	20	
G.726-40	Off	6	20	
G.729	On	7	20	
G.723.1	On	8	30	
G.722	On	9	20	
GSM-FR	Off	10	20	
iLBC	Off	11	20	

In the **Codecs Settings** section, you can configure work of voice codecs in use.

Figure 209. The VolP / Profile Name / Audio Settings page. The Codecs Settings section.

To change parameters of a codec, left-click the relevant line in the table.

G.711MuLaw	×
Enable codec	
Priority	
1	-
Period of packetization	
20	

Figure 210. The window for changing the codec parameters.

In the opened window, you can specify the following parameters:

Parameter	Description
Enable codec	To enable the codec, move the switch to the right.
	To disable the codec, move the switch to the left.
Priority	Priority of the codec upon setting a voice session. Select the needed value from the drop-down list.
Period of packetization	Quantity of milliseconds transmitted in one packet. Select the needed value from the drop-down list.

Click the **SAVE** button.

When all needed settings are configured, click the **APPLY** button.

Call Routing

On the **VoIP / Profile Name / Call Routing** page, you can configure speed dial parameters and dialplan settings.

C Editing	Call Routing	
Call Routing You can fill in the phone book for devices of	connected to the FXS ports of the router.	
Speed Dial	Dialplan Settings	
Key Number	Use dialplan	
1	Dialplan X.T X.<#:>	
2		
3		
4		
5		
6		
7		
8		
9		
0		
*		
#		

Figure 211. The VolP / Profile Name / Call Routing page.

In the Speed Dial section, you can assign phone numbers to the number keys of the phone set connected to the port associated with your profile. To do this, left-click the line corresponding to the key of the phone set. In the opened window, enter the needed number in the Number field and click the SAVE button. Also you can specify а number in the format phone number@IP address or phone number@host name for direct IP calls bypassing the SIP proxy server.

To change or delete the number assigned to a number key, left-click the line corresponding to the key of the phone set. In the opened window, edit or remove the value of the **Number** field and click the **SAVE** button.

To dial a number specified in the **Speed Dial** section, long press the relevant number key.

In the **Dialplan Settings** section, you can configure the dial plan for VoIP. To do this, move the **Use dialplan** switch to the right and in the **Dialplan** field displayed, specify the needed rule. You can specify several rules separated by the character | (vertical bar). You can use digits (0-9), the characters * (asterisk) and # (pound), and the following characters:

Parameter	Description
0	Digits and/or the characters * and # within square brackets specify a range of values for a certain position in the number.
x	Any digit, the character * or #.
	Any number of repetitions (including none) of the previous digit or character.
<>	Angle brackets containing digits separated by : (colon) allow to substitute the digit after the colon for the digit before the colon.
N	Any digit from 0 to 9.
,	A dial tone after the previous position.

In the **Numbering Plan** section, you can configure abbreviated dial, local calls, calls by IP, and combinations of keys on the phone to change some parameters of VoIP directly from the connected phones.

Numbering Plan	+ 🗊			
Prefix	User dial length	Action	Additional parameter	
*72#	1-40	Enable Call Waiting	-	
#72#	1-40	Disable Call Waiting	-	
*74#	1-40	Enable Do Not Disturb	-	
#74#	1-40	Disable Do Not Disturb	-	
78	1-40	Enable Unconditional Forwarding	-	
#78#	1-40	Disable Unconditional Forwarding	-	
76	1-40	Enable Call Forwarding on Busy	-	
#76#	1-40	Disable Call Forwarding on Busy	-	
75	1-40	Enable Call Forwarding No Answer	-	
#75#	1-40	Disable Call Forwarding No Answer	-	
79	1-40	Enable Hot Line	-	
#79#	1-40	Disable Hot Line	-	
(i) The part of the prefix that will not be sent at the end of dialing is highlighted in red				

Figure 212. The VolP / Profile Name / Call Routing page. The Numbering Plan section.

You can configure the following actions:

Parameter	Description
Set Dial	Sets the number for abbreviated dial. In the Additional parameter field, specify the actual number.
Enable Call Waiting	Enables the call waiting function.
Disable Call Waiting	Disables the call waiting function.
Enable Do Not Disturb	Enables rejection of all incoming calls (the busy tone will be heard).
Disable Do Not Disturb	Disables rejection of incoming calls.
Enable Unconditional Forwarding	Enables forwarding for all calls.
Disable Unconditional Forwarding	Disables forwarding for all calls.

Parameter	Description
Enable Call Forwarding On Busy	Enables call forwarding when this line is busy.
Disable Call Forwarding On Busy	Disables call forwarding when this line is busy.
Enable Call Forwarding No Answer	Enables call forwarding when this line gives no reply.
Disable Call Forwarding No Answer	Disables call forwarding when this line gives no reply.
Enable Hot Line	Enables the hotline.
Disable Hot Line	Disables the hotline.
Local Call	Makes a call to the neighboring line. In the Additional parameter field, specify the number of the SFX port for calling.
Call by IP	Makes an outgoing call. In the Additional parameter field, specify a part of the IP address for calling, for example, 192.168.100 . The remaining part of the IP address is dialed on the connected phone. Use the star (*) key to dial the dot (.) character.
Redial	Enables number redial.

To use the call forwarding function on the connected phone, dial the corresponding prefix, wait to hear the signal for number dialing in the receiver, and dial the number for forwarding on the phone. You can also configure call forwarding in the **List of SIP Lines** section on the **Profile Name / Basic Settings** page.

To chan	ge parameters	of a num	bering plan,	select the	relevant	line in the table.
---------	---------------	----------	--------------	------------	----------	--------------------

Configuration of Numbering Plan	×
Prefix *72#	
Action Enable Call Waiting	•
Remove digits from position*	
Delete digits* 0	
Min. dial length* 1	
Max. dial length* 40	
Additional parameter	
 To send service codes to the telephony operator, must use the additional parameter INVITE 	you
SAVE	

Figure 213. The window to configure the numbering plan.

In the opened window, you can specify the following parameters:

Parameter	Description		
Prefix	A combination of keys on the phone connected to the router to activate an action.		
Action	An action or operation performed by the DVG- 5402G/GF after the prefix is dialed. Select the required action from the drop-down list.		
Remove digits from position	The first symbol to be removed from the dialed prefix.		
Delete digits	The number of symbols to be removed from the dialed prefix.		
Min. dial length	The minimum length of a number dialed after the prefix.		
Max. dial length	The maximum length of a number dialed after the prefix.		

User Manual

Parameter	Description	
Additional parameter	If needed, specify an additional parameter for the selected action, for example, INVITE to send a service code to the SIP server, or the number or IP address for dialing.	

Click the **SAVE** button.

When all needed settings are configured, click the **APPLY** button.

Call Logging

On the **VoIP / Profile Name / Call Logging** page, you can configure the call log parameters and view information on all calls for your profile.

Call Routing	Call Logging		
Call Logging You can configure the call log parameters and view information on all calls for your profile.			
List of SIP Lines			
SIP ID / Number	Username	Number of calls	
1	-	0	

Figure 214. The VolP / Profile Name / Call Logging page.

To change the parameters and view the call history for a SIP line, select the relevant line in the table.

✔ Call Logging	Call Logging	
Call Logging You can configure the call log	parameters and view information on all calls for your profile.	
Maximum number of entries in call	history	
Call History Call history is empty		

Figure 215. The VolP / Profile Name / Call Logging page. The SIP line data.

On the opened page, you can specify the maximum number of call log entries. To do this, fill in the **Maximum number of entries in call history** field and click the **APPLY** button.

Upon every reboot of the router or its firmware update call log entries from the device's memory will be deleted. You can enable saving the call log to a USB storage connected to the router on the **VoIP / Advanced Settings** page.

In the **Call History** section, the detailed information on all calls is displayed: date and time, call duration, and a caller or called party number.

To sort the log records, in the **Call History** section, left-click the name of a column and click the ascending (\uparrow) or descending (\checkmark) **Sort** icon displayed.

Firewall

In this menu you can configure the firewall of the router:

- add rules for IP filtering
- create virtual servers
- define a DMZ
- configure the MAC filter
- specify restrictions on access to certain web sites
- enable the function of blocking advertisements
- create rules for remote access to the web-based interface.

IP Filter

On the **Firewall / IP Filter** page, you can create new rules for filtering IP packets and edit or remove existing rules.

✔ ALG/Passthrough	IP Filter	
	(+)	
	Filters	
	No rules created for IP filter	
	ADD	

Figure 216. The Firewall / IP Filter page.

To create a new rule, click the **ADD** button (+).

User Manual

😑 < IP Filter	IP Filter/Adding 전
General Settings	Source IP address (1) You can specify a range of IP addresses, a single IP address, or a subnet IP
	adress (for example, 10.10.10.10/24 for IPv4 or 2001:0db8:85a3:08d3:1319:8c2e:0370:7532/64 for IPv6)
Name*	Set as
(i) The number of characters should not exceed 32	Range or single IP address
Action	
Allow	✓ Start IPv4 address
Protocol	
ТСР	✓ End IPv4 address
IP version IPv4	-
Direction Source Destination	
LAN - WAN	•
Source interface Destination interface	
Auto Auto	•
Destination IP address	Ports
You can specify a range of IP addresses, a single IP address, or a sub address (for example, 10.10.10/24 for IPv4 or 2001:0db8:85a3:08d3:1319:8c2e:0370:7532/64 for IPv6)	net IP () You can specify one port, several ports separated by a comma (for example, 80,90), or a range of ports separated by a colon (for example, 80:90)
Set as	Destination port
Range or single IP address	•
Start IPv4 address	Set source port manually
End IPv4 address	•
APPLY	

Figure 217. The page for adding a rule for IP filtering.

You can specify the following parameters:

Parameter	Description	
	General Settings	
Enable rule	Move the switch to the right to enable the rule. Move the switch to the left to disable the rule.	
Name	A name for the rule for easier identification. You can specify any name.	

Parameter	Description
	Select an action for the rule.Allow: Allows packet transmission in accordance with the
Action	 criteria specified by the rule. Deny: Denies packet transmission in accordance with the criteria specified by the rule.
Protocol	A protocol for network packet transmission. Select a value from the drop-down list.
IP version	An IP version to which the rule will be applied. Select the relevant value from the drop-down list.
	 The direction of network packet transmission to which the rule will be applied. Select the source of the packet direction from the Source drop-down list. WAN: The rule will be applied to the packets transmitted
	 from the external network. LAN: The rule will be applied to the packets transmitted from the local network.
	• GRE : The rule will be applied to the packets transmitted from the GRE tunnel (<i>available if a GRE tunnel has been created on the device</i>).
Direction	• IPIP : The rule will be applied to the packets transmitted from the IPIP tunnel (<i>available if an IPIP tunnel has been created on the device</i>).
	• IPsec : The rule will be applied to the packets transmitted from the IPsec tunnel (<i>available if an IPsec tunnel has been created on the device</i>).
	• PPTP Server : The rule will be applied to the packets transmitted from the PPTP server (<i>available if a PPTP server has been created on the device</i>).
	• L2TP Server : The rule will be applied to the packets transmitted from the L2TP server (<i>available if an L2TP server has been created on the device</i>).

Parameter	Description	
	Select the destination of the packet direction from the Destination drop-down list.	
	• Router : The rule will be applied to the packets transmitted to DVG-5402G/GF.	
	• WAN : The rule will be applied to the packets transmitted to the external network.	
	• LAN: The rule will be applied to the packets transmitted to the local network.	
	• GRE : The rule will be applied to the packets transmitted to the GRE tunnel (<i>available if a GRE tunnel has been created on the device</i>).	
	• IPIP : The rule will be applied to the packets transmitted to the IPIP tunnel (<i>available if an IPIP tunnel has been created on the device</i>).	
	• IPsec : The rule will be applied to the packets transmitted to the IPsec tunnel (<i>available if an IPsec tunnel has been created on the device</i>).	
	• PPTP Server : The rule will be applied to the packets transmitted to the PPTP server (<i>available if a PPTP server has been created on the device</i>).	
	• L2TP Server : The rule will be applied to the packets transmitted to the L2TP server (<i>available if an L2TP server has been created on the device</i>).	
	From the Source interface and Destination interface drop- down lists, select source and destination interfaces for which the rule will be applied. Leave the Auto values to apply the rule to all created WAN interfaces.	
	Source IP address	
Set as	Select the needed value from the drop-down list.	

	The source host start IPv4 or IPv6 address.
Start IPv4 address /	If it is necessary to specify a single address, leave the End IPv4 address / End IPv6 address field blank.
Start IPv6 address	You can choose a device connected to the router's LAN at the moment. To do this, select the relevant IPv4 or IPv6 address from the drop-down list (the field will be filled in automatically).

Parameter	Description	
End IPv4 address / End IPv6 address	The source host end IPv4 or IPv6 address.	
Subnet IPv4 address / Subnet IPv6 address	The source subnet IPv4 or IPv6 address. The field is displayed when the Subnet value is selected from the Set as drop-down list.	
	Destination IP address	
Set as	Select the needed value from the drop-down list.	
	The destination host start IPv4 or IPv6 address.	
Start IPv4 address /	If it is necessary to specify a single address, leave the End IPv4 address / End IPv6 address field blank.	
Start IPv6 address	You can choose a device connected to the router's LAN at the moment. To do this, select the relevant IPv4 or IPv6 address from the drop-down list (the field will be filled in automatically).	
End IPv4 address / End IPv6 address	The destination host end IPv4 or IPv6 address.	
Subnet IPv4 address / Subnet IPv6 address	The destination subnet IPv4 or IPv6 address. The field is displayed when the Subnet value is selected from the Set as drop-down list.	
	Ports	
Destination port	A port of the destination IP address. You can specify one port, several ports separated by a comma, or a range of ports separated by a colon.	
Set source port manually	Move the switch to the right to specify a port of the source IP address manually. Upon that the Source port field is displayed.	
Source port	A port of the source IP address. You can specify one port, several ports separated by a comma, or a range of ports separated by a colon.	

Click the **APPLY** button.

To set a schedule for the IP filter rule, click the **Set schedule** icon (()) in the line corresponding to this rule. In the opened window, from the **Rule** drop-down list, select the **Create rule** value to create a new schedule (see the *Schedule* section, page 324) or select the **Select an existing one** value to use the existing one. Existing schedules are displayed in the **Rule name** drop-down list.

To enable the IP filter rule at the time specified in the schedule and disable it at the other time, select the **Enable rule** value from the **Action** drop-down list and click the **SAVE** button.

To disable the IP filter rule at the time specified in the schedule and enable it at the other time, select the **Disable rule** value from the **Action** drop-down list and click the **SAVE** button.

To edit a rule, select the relevant line in the table. On the opened page, change the needed parameters and click the **APPLY** button.

To change or delete the schedule for a rule, click the **Edit schedule** icon (\bigcirc) in the line corresponding to this rule. In the opened window, change the parameters and click the **SAVE** button or click the **DELETE FROM SCHEDULE** button.

To remove a rule, select the checkbox located to the left of the relevant line of the table and click

the **DELETE** button ($\boxed{10}$). Also you can remove a rule on the editing page.

Virtual Servers

On the **Firewall / Virtual Servers** page, you can create virtual servers for redirecting incoming Internet traffic to a specified IP address in the local area network.

🗸 IP Filter	Virtual Servers	
	+	
	Virtual Servers	
	No virtual server exists	
	ADD	

Figure 218. The Firewall / Virtual Servers page.

To create a new virtual server, click the **ADD** button (+).

User Manual

E < Virtual Servers Virtual Se	ervers/Adding
General Settings	Private Network Settings
Name* (i) The number of characters should not exceed 32 Template Custom	Private port* Oru can specify one port, several ports separated by a comma (for example, 80,90), or a range of ports separated by a colon (for example, 80:90)
Interface <all> Protocol TCP</all>	
 NAT Loopback Public Network Settings Remote IP address You can specify a single IP address, or a subnet IP address (for example, 10.10.10/24) 	The following ports are used in remote access settings and other rules for virtual servers: "80, 443" You cannot use them for the current rule.
Remote IP address × ADD REMOTE IP	
Public port* Vou can specify one port, several ports separated by a comma (for example, 80,90), or a range of ports separated by a colon (for example, 80:90)	
APPLY	

Figure 219. The page for adding a virtual server.

You can specify the following parameters:

Parameter	Description	
	General Settings	
Enable	Move the switch to the right to enable the server.	
Ellable	Move the switch to the left to disable the server.	
Name	A name for the virtual server for easier identification. You can specify any name.	
Template	Select a virtual server template from the drop-down list, or select Custom to specify all parameters of the new virtual server manually.	

Parameter	Description
Interface	A WAN connection to which this virtual server will be assigned.
Protocol	A protocol that will be used by the new virtual server. Select a value from the drop-down list.
NAT Loopback	Move the switch to the right in order to let the users of the router's LAN access the local server using the external IP address of the router or its DDNS name (if a DDNS service is configured). Users from the external network access the router using the same address (or DDNS name).
	Public Network Settings
	The IP address of the host/subnet of the client that will connect to the virtual server.
Remote IP address	To add one more IP address, click the ADD REMOTE IP button and enter the address in the displayed line.
	To remove the IP address, click the Delete icon (\times) in the line of the address.
Public port	A port of the router from which traffic is directed to the IP address specified in the Private IP field in the Private Network Settings section. You can specify one port or several ports separated by a comma.
	Private Network Settings
Private IP	The IP address of the server from the local area network. To choose a device connected to the router's LAN at the moment, select the relevant value from the drop-down list (the field will be filled in automatically).
Private port	A port of the IP address specified in the Private IP field to which traffic is directed from the Public port . You can specify one port or several ports separated by a comma.

Click the **APPLY** button.

To set a schedule for a virtual server, click the **Set schedule** icon (()) in the line corresponding to this rule. In the opened window, from the **Rule** drop-down list, select the **Create rule** value to create a new schedule (see the *Schedule* section, page 324) or select the **Select an existing one** value to use the existing one. Existing schedules are displayed in the **Rule name** drop-down list.

To enable the virtual server at the time specified in the schedule and disable it at the other time, select the **Enable rule** value from the **Action** drop-down list and click the **SAVE** button.

To disable the virtual server at the time specified in the schedule and enable it at the other time, select the **Disable rule** value from the **Action** drop-down list and click the **SAVE** button.

To edit the parameters of an existing server, select the relevant line in the table. On the opened page, change the needed parameters and click the **APPLY** button.

To change or delete the schedule for a server, click the **Edit schedule** icon (\bigcirc) in the line corresponding to this rule. In the opened window, change the parameters and click the **SAVE** button or click the **DELETE FROM SCHEDULE** button.

To remove a server, select the checkbox located to the left of the relevant line of the table and click

the **DELETE** button ($\overline{\square}$). Also you can remove a rule on the editing page.

DMZ

A DMZ is a host or network segment located "between" internal (local) and external (global) networks. In the router, the DMZ implements the capability to transfer a request coming to a port of the router from the external network to a specified host of the internal network.

On the Firewall / DMZ page, you can specify the IP address of the DMZ host.

≡	Summary DMZ	
	DMZ	
	A DMZ is a host or network segment located "between" internal (local) and external (global) networks. In the router, the DMZ implements the capability to transfer a request coming to a port of the router from the external network to a specified host of the internal network.	
	The contract of the contract o	
	Enable NAT Loopback	
	IP address*	
	APPLY	

Figure 220. The Firewall / DMZ page.

To enable the DMZ, move the **Enable** switch to the right.

Enter the IP address of a host from your network in the **IP address** field. To choose a device connected to the router's LAN at the moment, select the relevant value from the drop-down list (the field will be filled in automatically).

Move the **Enable NAT Loopback** switch to the right in order to let the users of the router's LAN access the DMZ host using the external IP address of the router or its DDNS name (if a DDNS service is configured). Users from the external network access the router using the same address (or DDNS name).

Click the **APPLY** button.

Note that when the DMZ is enabled, all traffic coming to a port of the WAN interface of the router is directed to the same port of the specified IP address. Also note that virtual servers have higher priority than the DMZ host. In other words, if there has been created a virtual server that directs traffic from external port 80 to a port of the device from the router's local network, then entering http://router_WAN_IP in the address bar, users of the external network are directed to the specified port and IP address configured for the virtual server, but not to port 80 of the device with the IP address specified on the Firewall / DMZ page. To set a schedule for the DMZ, click the **Set schedule** icon (()). In the opened window, from

the **Rule** drop-down list, select the **Create rule** value to create a new schedule (see the *Schedule* section, page 324) or select the **Select an existing one** value to use the existing one. Existing schedules are displayed in the **Rule name** drop-down list.

To enable the DMZ for the time specified in the schedule and disable it at the other time, select the **Enable rule** value from the **Action** drop-down list and click the **SAVE** button.

To disable the DMZ for the time specified in the schedule and enable it at the other time, select the **Disable rule** value from the **Action** drop-down list and click the **SAVE** button.

To change or delete the schedule for the DMZ, click the **Edit schedule** icon (\bigcirc). In the opened window, change the parameters and click the **SAVE** button or click the **DELETE FROM SCHEDULE** button.

To disable the DMZ, move the **Enable** switch to the left and click the **APPLY** button.

MAC Filter

On the **Firewall / MAC Filter** page, you can configure MAC-address-based filtering for computers of the router's LAN.

¢ dmz	MAC Filter	
MAC Filter		
	filtering for computers of the router's LAN.	
Default mode Allow	•	
List of Exceptions +		
No rules created for MAC filter		

Figure 221. The Firewall / MAC Filter page.

Select the needed action from the drop-down list in the **Default mode** section to configure filtering for all devices of the router's network.

- **Allow**: Allows access to the router's network and to the Internet for devices (the value is specified by default);
- **Deny**: Blocks access to the router's network for devices.
- You can use the **Deny** mode only if an active rule which allows access to the device's network is created on the page.

To create a rule (specify a MAC address of a device for which the specified filtering mode will be applied), click the **ADD** button (+).

Add Rule	×
Enable rule	
Allow	•
MAC address*	•
Name*	
SAVE	

Figure 222. The window for adding a rule for the MAC filter.

Parameter	Description
Enable rule	Move the switch to the right to enable the rule.
	Move the switch to the left to disable the rule.
	Select an action for the rule.
Action	• Deny : Blocks access to the Internet for the device with the specified MAC address even if the default mode allows access for all devices.
	• Allow : Allows access to the router's network and to the Internet for the device with the specified MAC address even if the default mode denies access for all devices.
MAC address	The MAC address of a device from the router's LAN. You can enter the MAC address of a device connected to the router's LAN at the moment. To do this, select the relevant device from the drop-down list (the field will be filled in automatically).
Name	The name of the device for easier identification. You can specify any name.

In the opened window, you can specify the following parameters:

After specifying the needed parameters, click the **SAVE** button.

To set a schedule for the MAC filter rule, click the **Set schedule** icon (③) in the line corresponding to this rule. In the opened window, from the **Rule** drop-down list, select the **Create rule** value to create a new schedule (see the *Schedule* section, page 324) or select the **Select an existing one** value to use the existing one. Existing schedules are displayed in the **Rule name** drop-down list.

To enable the MAC filter rule at the time specified in the schedule and disable it at the other time, select the **Enable rule** value from the **Action** drop-down list and click the **SAVE** button.

To disable the MAC filter rule at the time specified in the schedule and enable it at the other time, select the **Disable rule** value from the **Action** drop-down list and click the **SAVE** button.

To edit a rule, select the relevant line in the table. In the opened window, change the needed parameters and click the **SAVE** button.

To change or delete the schedule for a rule, click the **Edit schedule** icon (\bigcirc) in the line corresponding to this rule. In the opened window, change the parameters and click the **SAVE** button or click the **DELETE FROM SCHEDULE** button.

To remove a rule, select the checkbox located to the left of the relevant line of the table and click

the **DELETE** button ($\overline{\mathbf{10}}$). Also you can remove a rule in the editing window.

URL Filter

On the **Firewall / URL Filter** page, you can specify restrictions on access to certain web sites and define devices to which the specified restrictions will be applied.

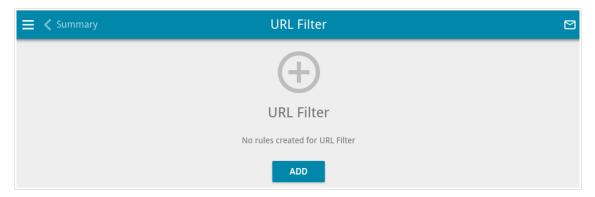


Figure 223. The Firewall / URL Filter page.

To create a new rule, click the **ADD** button (+).

😑 🗶 URL Filter	URL Filter/Adding
URL Filter You can specify restrictions on access to certain website devices from the list.	es. Rules can be applied to those devices that are added to the list or to all but
D Enable	
Address filtering	Client filtering
Block all URLs except listed	✓ All but devices from list
Addresses +	Clients +
URL address Match with template	MAC address
APPLY	

Figure 224. The page for adding a rule for URL filter.

On the opened page, move the **Enable** switch to the right to enable the rule, then select a mode from the **Address filtering** drop-down list.

- **Block listed URLs**: When this value is selected, the router blocks access to all web sites specified in the **Addresses** section;
- **Block all URLs except listed**: When this value is selected, the router allows access to web sites specified in the **Addresses** section and blocks access to all other web sites.

To specify URL addresses to which the selected filtering mode will be applied, in the **Addresses** section, click the **ADD** button (+). In the opened window, you can specify the following parameters:

Parameter	Description	
URL address	A URL address, a part of URL address, or a keyword.	
	Select a value from the drop-down list.	
	• Full : The request address should exactly match the value specified in the field above.	
Match with template	• Begin : The request address should begin with the value specified in the field above.	
	• End : The request address should end with the value specified in the field above.	
	• Partly : The request address should contain the value specified in the field above in any part of it.	

Click the **SAVE** button.

To remove a URL address from the list, select the checkbox located to the left of the relevant address in the table and click the **DELETE** button ($\boxed{10}$). Also you can remove an address in the editing window.

To define devices to which the specified restrictions will be applied, select a needed value from the **Client filtering** drop-down list.

- **Devices from list**: When this value is selected, the router applies restrictions only to the devices specified in the **Clients** section;
- All but devices from list: When this value is selected, the router does not apply restrictions to the devices specified in the **Clients** section, but applies restrictions to other devices.

To add a client to the list, in the **Clients** section, click the **ADD** button (+). In the opened window, in the **MAC address** field, enter the MAC address of the device from the LAN. You can enter the MAC address of a device connected to the router's LAN at the moment. To do this, select the relevant device from the drop-down list (the field will be filled in automatically) and click the **SAVE** button.

To remove a client from the list, select the checkbox located to the left of the relevant rule of the

table and click the **DELETE** button ($\boxed{10}$). Also you can remove a client in the editing window.

After completing configuration of the URL filter, click the **APPLY** button.

To set a schedule for the URL filter rule, click the **Set schedule** icon (\bigcirc) in the line corresponding to this rule. In the opened window, from the **Rule** drop-down list, select the **Create rule** value to create a new schedule (see the *Schedule* section, page 324) or select the **Select an existing one** value to use the existing one. Existing schedules are displayed in the **Rule name** drop-down list.

To enable the URL filter rule at the time specified in the schedule and disable it at the other time, select the **Enable rule** value from the **Action** drop-down list and click the **SAVE** button.

To disable the URL filter rule at the time specified in the schedule and enable it at the other time, select the **Disable rule** value from the **Action** drop-down list and click the **SAVE** button.

To edit a rule, select the relevant line in the table. On the opened page, change the needed parameters and click the **APPLY** button.

To change or delete the schedule for a rule, click the **Edit schedule** icon (\bigcirc) in the line corresponding to this rule. In the opened window, change the parameters and click the **SAVE** button or click the **DELETE FROM SCHEDULE** button.

To remove a rule, select the checkbox located to the left of the relevant line of the table and click the **DELETE** button ($\boxed{10}$).

AdBlock

On the **Firewall / AdBlock** page, you can enable the function of blocking advertisements which appear during web surfing.

< URL Filter	AdB	lock	
AdBlock A service for blocking ads and malicious websites.			
Common Settings		URL	
Enable		(i) Here you can add, edit, and remove addresses of files which contain host lists.	7
Path*	۹	ADD	
Save to the device's memory			
APPLY			

Figure 225. The Firewall / AdBlock page.

To enable the advertisements blocking function, in the **Common Settings** section, move the **Enable** switch to the right.

In the **Path** field, locate a folder to which a file for blocking advertisements will be saved. To do this, click the **Search** icon (\mathbf{Q}), go to the needed folder, and click the **SELECT** button.

Then in the **URL** section, click the **ADD** button and in the line displayed, enter a URL address of a file containing the list of advertising web sites which should be blocked.

Click the **APPLY** button and wait while the file is being loaded to the memory of the USB storage. Also you can save the file with the list of advertising web sites to the device's memory. To do this, move the **Save to the device's memory** switch to the right, and then click the **APPLY** button.

Files saved to the device's memory are updated upon every reboot of the router or its or firmware update. In case the file is not available at that moment, the list of web sites to be blocked will not be received.

If you don't want to use a file for blocking advertisements any longer, click the **Delete** icon (\times) in the line of the URL address of the relevant file. Then click the **APPLY** button.

To disable the advertisements blocking function, move the **Enable** switch to the left and click the **APPLY** button.

Remote Access

On the **Firewall / Remote Access** page, you can configure access to the web-based interface of the router. By default, the access from external networks to the router is closed. If you need to allow access to the router from the external network, create relevant rules.

≡	< AdBlock	Remote Access	
	emote Access		
	u can configure access to the web-based interface of th ed to allow access to the router from the external netw	e router. By default, the access from external networks to the router is closed. If you ork, create relevant rules.	I
Ru	Iles +		
No	rules created for remote access		

Figure 226. The Firewall / Remote Access page.

To create a new rule, click the **ADD** button (+).

Add I	tule		×
	Enable		
Name*			
(i) The	number of charact	ers should not	exceed 32
Interface			
Autom	atic		•
IP versio	1		
			_
	Open access	from any	external
	host	from any	external
IPv4	host	from any	external
	host	from any	external
IP add	host ess*	from any	external
IP add	host ess*	from any	external
IP adds	host ess*	from any	external
IP add Mask* Public pc 80	host ess*	from any	external
IP addi Mask* Public po 80 Protocol	host ess*	from any	external

Figure 227. The window for adding a rule for remote management.

Parameter	Description
Enable	Move the switch to the right to enable the rule.
	Move the switch to the left to disable the rule.
Name	A name for the rule for easier identification. You can specify any name.
Interface	From the drop-down list, select an interface (WAN connection) through which remote access to the router will operate. Leave the Automatic value to allow remote access to operate through all created WAN connections.
IP version	An IP version to which the rule will be applied. Select the relevant value from the drop-down list.
Open access from any external host	Move the switch to the right to allow access to the router for any host. Upon that the IP address and Mask fields are not displayed.
IP address	A host or a subnet to which the rule is applied. You can specify an IPv4 or IPv6 address.
	For the IPv4-based network only.
Mask	The mask of the subnet.
Dublic recent	For the IPv4-based network only.
Public port	An external port of the router. You can specify only one port.
Protocol	The protocol available for remote management of the router.

After specifying the needed parameters, click the **SAVE** button.

To set a schedule for the remote access rule, click the **Set schedule** icon (() in the line corresponding to this rule. In the opened window, from the **Rule** drop-down list, select the **Create rule** value to create a new schedule (see the *Schedule* section, page 324) or select the **Select an existing one** value to use the existing one. Existing schedules are displayed in the **Rule name** drop-down list.

To enable the rule for remote access at the time specified in the schedule and disable it at the other time, select the **Enable rule** value from the **Action** drop-down list and click the **SAVE** button.

To disable the rule for remote access at the time specified in the schedule and enable it at the other time, select the **Disable rule** value from the **Action** drop-down list and click the **SAVE** button.

To edit a rule for remote access, left-click the relevant rule. In the opened window, change the needed parameters and click the **SAVE** button.

To change or delete the schedule for a rule, click the **Edit schedule** icon (\bigcirc) in the line corresponding to this rule. In the opened window, change the parameters and click the **SAVE** button or click the **DELETE FROM SCHEDULE** button.

To remove a rule for remote access, select the checkbox located to the left of the relevant line in the table and click the **DELETE** button ($\boxed{10}$).

System

In this menu you can do the following:

- change the password used to access the router's settings
- restore the factory default settings
- create a backup of the router's configuration
- restore the router's configuration from a previously saved file
- save the current settings to the non-volatile memory
- reboot the router
- change the web-based interface language
- edit or add commands for the hardware buttons
- update the firmware of the router
- configure automatic notification on new firmware version
- configure rules to enable/disable Wi-Fi connection and the Wi-Fi filter, automatic reboot of the device and saving a configuration backup to the connected USB storage on a schedule, set rules for limitation of wireless client maximum bandwidth, and set a schedule for different rules and settings of the firewall
- view the system log; configure sending the system log to a remote host and/or a USB storage connected to the router
- check availability of a host on the Internet through the web-based interface of the router
- trace the route to a host
- enable or disable access to the device settings via TELNET and/or SSH
- configure automatic synchronization of the system time or manually configure the date and time for the router
- enable the Auto Provision function.

Configuration

On the **System / Configuration** page, you can change the password for the administrator account used to access the web-based interface of the router and to access the device settings via TELNET, restore the factory defaults, backup the current configuration or configure automatic saving of the configuration backup to the connected USB storage on a schedule, restore the router's configuration from a previously created file, save the changed settings to the non-volatile memory, reboot the device, or change the web-based interface language.

🚍 🗶 Summary	Configurati	on	
User	Ac	tion	
admin		Factory Reset factory default settings	
New password	8	Backup C Save current configuration to a file	
Password should be between 1 and 31 ASCII characters	L C	C Restore Load previously saved configuration to the device	
Password confirmation	ø	Save	
SAVE	(Save current settings Reboot Reboot device	
Miscellaneous			
Language English	•		
Idle time (in minutes)* 10			
When the function "Stay signed in" is enabled, then users are n redirected to the login page despite the specified idle time.	ot		
SAVE			

Figure 228. The System / Configuration page.

In order to change the password for the administrator account, in the **User** section, enter a new password in the **New password** and **Password confirmation** fields. Use digits, Latin letters (uppercase and/or lowercase), and other characters available in the US keyboard layout.¹⁹ Click the **Show** icon (**(**) to display the entered values. Then click the **SAVE** button.

^{19 0-9,} A-Z, a-z, space, !"#\$%&'()*+,-./:;<=>?@[\]^_`{|}~.

Remember or write down the new password for the administrator account. In case of losing the new password, you can access the settings of the router only after restoring the factory default settings via the hardware **RESET** button. This procedure wipes out all settings that you have configured for your router.

To change the web-based interface language, in the **Miscellaneous** section, select the needed value from the **Language** drop-down list.

To change a period of inactivity after which the router completes the session of the interface, in the **Miscellaneous** section, in the **Idle time** field, specify the needed value (in minutes). By default, the value **5** is specified. Then click the **SAVE** button.

Control	Description
Factory	Click the button to restore the factory default settings. Also you can restore the factory defaults via the hardware RESET button (see the <i>Side Panel</i> section, page 19).
Backup	Click the button to save the configuration (all settings of the router) to your PC or a USB storage connected to the router. See the <i>Creating Configuration Backup</i> section, page 316 for details on backup creation.
	Click the button to select and upload a previously saved configuration file (all settings of the router) located on your PC or a USB storage connected to the router.
	To upload a configuration file from your PC, select the Local storage value from the File location drop-down list. Click the CHOOSE FILE button and follow the dialog box appeared.
Restore	To upload a configuration file from a USB storage connected to the router, select the USB Storage value from the File location drop-down list. Then locate the needed configuration file. To do this, click the Search icon (\mathbf{Q}) in the Path field. Then choose the needed file and click the SELECT button.
	To upload the configuration file, click the APPLY button.
	Click the button to save settings to the non-volatile memory.
Save	The router saves changed settings automatically. If changed settings have not been saved automatically, a notification is displayed in the top right part of the page.

In the **Action** section, the following buttons are available:

Control	Description
Reboot	Click the button to reboot the device. All unsaved changes will be lost after the device's reboot.

Creating Configuration Backup

To create a configuration backup, click the **Backup** button in the **Action** section.

Backup	×
File location	
USB Storage	•
O Backup manually	
Schedule backup	
Path to save on schedule*	
Path is not selected	Q
File name*	tor az
	.tar.gz
(i) Attention! Unmount storage in 'USB storage/Information' menu before remov	ing USB storage
SET SCHEDULE	

Figure 229. The window for creating a configuration backup.

To save the configuration backup to your PC, select the **Local storage** value from the **File location** drop-down list and click the **SAVE** button. The configuration backup will be stored in the download location of your web browser.

To save the configuration backup to a USB storage connected to the router, select the **USB Storage** value from the **File location** drop-down list. Then select the **Backup manually** choice of the radio button and click the **SAVE** button. In the opened window, in the **File name** field, specify a name for the configuration file. Then go to the needed folder and click the **SELECT** button to save the file.

To configure automatic creation of a configuration backup on a schedule, select the **Schedule backup** choice of the radio button and locate a folder to save the files (available if the **USB Storage** value was selected in the **File location** drop-down list). To do this, click the **Search** icon (\mathbf{Q}) in the **Path to save on schedule** field. Then go to the needed folder and click the **SELECT** button.

In the **File name** field, specify a name for the configuration file. Then click the **SET SCHEDULE** button.

In the opened window, specify a schedule name and the interval and time for its execution (see the *Schedule* section, page 324 for detailed description of the fields).

Click the **SAVE** button.

To change or delete the schedule, click the **Edit schedule** icon ((S)). In the opened window, click the **CHANGE SCHEDULE** button, change the parameters and click the **SAVE** button or click the **DELETE FROM SCHEDULE** button.

Buttons Configuration

On the **System / Buttons Configuration** page, you can edit or add commands for the **RESET**, **WLAN**, and **WPS** hardware buttons.

≡ < Si	ummary	Butto	ns Configurat	ion		
	ons Configuration page you can configure actions of the	e device hardwar	e buttons.			
Reset	t 🕂 🗊					
	Command		Action		Button press duration	
	Reset config and reboot		Long press		7 - 60	
Wi-Fi	+ 🗊 Command	Action		Button p	press duration	
	Enable Wi-Fi	Long press		0 - 7		
WPS	+ 1					
	Command	Action		Button p	ress duration	
APF	Enable WPS	Long press		0 - 7		

Figure 230. The System / Buttons Configuration page.

The page displays commands assigned to the buttons by default (for the description of the buttons actions with the commands assigned by default, see the *Product Appearance* section, page 17). You can edit or delete them.

To add a command for a button, click the **ADD** button (+) in the relevant section.

Add command	×
Command Reset config and reboot	•
Action Double click	•
SAVE	•

Figure 231. The window for adding a command.

In the opened window, specify the following parameters:

Control	Description
	Reset / Wi-Fi / WPS
Command	From the drop-down list, select a command.
	From the drop-down list, select an action for the command.
	• Single click : One short press of the button lasting less than one second.
Action	• Double click : Two short presses of the button.
	• Long press: Pressing of the button for several seconds. When this value is selected, the Button press duration section is displayed.
Button press duration	Specify a period of time (in seconds) within which you should hold the button to perform the specified action. You can specify values from 2 to 60 .

Click the **SAVE** button.

To edit the parameters for a command, select the relevant line in the table. In the opened window, change the needed parameters and click the **SAVE** button.

To remove a command, select the checkbox located to the left of the relevant line in the table and

click the **DELETE** button ($\boxed{\blacksquare}$).

After specifying the needed parameters, click the **APPLY** button.

Firmware Update

On the **System / Firmware Update** page, you can update the firmware of the router and configure the automatic check for updates of the router's firmware.

<u>Update the firmware only when the router is connected to your PC via a wired</u> connection.

≡ < Summary Firmw	are Update 🖸 🖸
Local Update () Current firmware version: 4.0.5 Restore factory defaults after firmware update CHOOSE FILE File is not selected UPDATE FIRMWARE	Remote Update Remote server URL fwupdate.dlink.ru ADD Check for updates automatically Interval (in seconds)* 43200
	CHECK FOR UPDATES APPLY SETTINGS

Figure 232. The System / Firmware Update page.

The current version of the router's firmware is displayed in the **Current firmware version** field.

By default, the automatic check for the router's firmware updates is enabled. If the Access point, Repeater or Client mode was selected in the Initial Configuration Wizard and the Static value is selected from the Mode of local IP address assignment list on the Connections Setup / LAN page, the Gateway IP address field should also be filled in on order to realize automatic check.

If a firmware update is available, a notification will be displayed in the top right corner of the page.

To disable the automatic check for firmware updates, in the **Remote Update** section, move the **Check for updates automatically** switch to the left and click the **APPLY SETTINGS** button.

To enable the automatic check for firmware updates, in the **Remote Update** section, move the **Check for updates automatically** switch to the right. In the **Interval** field, specify the time period (in seconds) between checks or leave the value specified by default (**43200**).

By default, in the **Remote server URL** field, the D-Link update server address (**fwupdate.dlink.ru**) is specified. To add one more address, click the **ADD** button and enter

the address in the displayed line. To remove the address, click the **Delete** button ($\overline{10}$) in the line of the address.

Click the **APPLY SETTINGS** button.

You can update the firmware of the router locally (from the hard drive of your PC) or remotely (from the update server).

Local Update

Attention! Do not turn off the router before the firmware update is completed. This may cause the device breakdown.

To update the firmware of the router locally, follow the next steps:

- 1. Download a new version of the firmware from <u>www.dlink.ru</u>.
- 2. Click the CHOOSE FILE button in the Local Update section on the System / Firmware Update page to locate the new firmware file.
- 3. If you want to restore the factory default settings immediately after updating the firmware, move the **Restore factory defaults after firmware update** switch to the right.
- 4. Click the **UPDATE FIRMWARE** button.
- 5. Wait until the router is rebooted (about one and a half or two minutes).
- 6. Log into the web-based interface using the login (admin) and the current password.

If after updating the firmware the router doesn't work correctly, please restore the factory default settings. To do this, click the **Factory** button on the **System / Configuration** page. Wait until the router is rebooted.

Remote Update

Attention! Do not turn off the router before the firmware update is completed. This may cause the device breakdown.

To update the firmware of the router remotely, follow the next steps:

- 1. On the **System / Firmware Update** page, in the **Remote Update** section, click the **CHECK FOR UPDATES** button to check if a newer firmware version exists.
- 2. Click the **UPDATE FIRMWARE** button (the button is displayed if a newer version of the firmware is available).
- 3. Wait until the router is rebooted (about one and a half or two minutes).
- 4. Log into the web-based interface using the login (admin) and the current password.

If after updating the firmware the router doesn't work correctly, please restore the factory default settings. To do this, click the **Factory** button on the **System / Configuration** page. Wait until the router is rebooted.

Schedule

On the **System / Schedule** page, you can enable/disable Wi-Fi connection and the Wi-Fi filter, configure automatic reboot of the device on a schedule, set rules for limitation of wireless client maximum bandwidth, and set a schedule for different rules and settings of the firewall.

Before creating a schedule you need to configure automatic synchronization of the system time with a time server on the Internet(see the *System Time* section, page 337).

<	Firmware Update	Schedule (Z
-	Auto Reboot		1
	State	Off	
	REBOOT ON SCHEDULE		
	All Tasks +		

Figure 233. The System / Schedule page.

To configure automatic reboot of the device on a schedule, click the **REBOOT ON SCHEDULE** button in the **Auto Reboot** section.

The		formed only if the system time	× of
	ne device is syr n Time:	chronized with an NTP server. 24 June 2021, 14	4:57
Mode Simp	lified mode		•
Schee	dule name*		
	l of execution y day		•
Time	Hours (0-23) 0	Minutes (0-59) : 0	
\sim	hen entering sever le, "2, 5, 12")	ıl parameters, use the symbol "," (for	
SAV	E		

Figure 234. The window for configuring automatic reboot on a schedule.

In the opened window, in the **System Time** field, the system time of the device is displayed. You can select the **Simplified mode** value from the **Mode** drop-down list and specify the following parameters:

Parameter	Description	
	Simplified mode	
Schedule name	Specify a schedule name for easier identification. You can specify any name.	
	Specify the time period for the device's reboot.	
Interval of execution	• Every day : When this value is selected, the Time field is displayed in the section.	
	• Every week : When this value is selected, the names of days of the week and the Time field are displayed in the section.	
	• Every month: When this value is selected, the Day of month and Time fields are displayed in the section.	
Time	Specify the time for the device's reboot.	
Days of week	Select a day or days of the week when the device will be automatically rebooted. To do this, select the checkbox located to the left of the relevant value.	
Day of month	Specify a day of the month. You can specify one value or several values separated by a comma.	

In the advanced mode, you can specify more parameters for the schedule using a cron expression. To do this, select the **Advanced mode** value from the **Mode** drop-down list and specify the needed values in the fields displayed. You can specify one value or several values separated by a comma. You can use the character * (asterisk) to specify the entire range of possible values. Upon that the **Schedule** field will be filled in automatically. In the **Schedule name** field, specify a schedule name for easier identification (you can specify any name).

Click the **SAVE** button.

To edit the automatic reboot schedule, click the **EDIT** button in the **Auto Reboot** section. In the opened window, change the needed parameters and click the **SAVE** button.

To disable automatic reboot of the device on a schedule, click the **EDIT** button in the **Auto Reboot** section. In the opened window, click the **DISABLE** button.

To set a schedule for a task which will be applied to a rule or setting of the firewall, for limitation of wireless client maximum bandwidth or will enable/disable Wi-Fi connection or Wi-Fi filter, click

the ADD button (+) in the All Tasks section.

Schedul	le	×
		ned only if the system time of nized with an NTP server.
System Tim	ne:	24 June 2021, 15:10
D Pe	rform task o	n schedule
Mode		
Simplified	mode	-
Interval of ex Every day		•
Hou	rs (0-23)	Minutes (0-59)
Time 0	:	0
(i) When en		ameters, use the symbol "," (for
example, "2, 5		
example, "2, 5	Minutes*	Seconds*
example, "2, 5		Seconds* 30

Figure 235. The window for adding a schedule for a task.

In the opened window, in the **System Time** field, the system time of the device is displayed. You can select the simplified mode of the schedule. To do this, select the **Simplified mode** value from the **Mode** drop-down list and specify the following parameters:

Parameter	Description
Perform task on	Move the switch to the right to enable the task.
schedule	Move the switch to the left to disable the task.

Parameter	Description	
	Simplified mode	
Schedule name	Specify a schedule name for easier identification. You can specify any name.	
	Specify the time period for performing a task.	
	Every minute.	
Interval of execution	• Every hour : When this value is selected, the Time field is displayed in the section.	
	• Every day : When this value is selected, the Time field is displayed in the section.	
	• Every week : When this value is selected, the names of days of the week and the Time field are displayed in the section.	
	• Every month: When this value is selected, the Day of month and Time fields are displayed in the section.	
Duration	Specify the interval during which the task will be performing.	
Time	Specify the time when the task should start running.	
Days of week	Select a day or days of the week when the task will be performing. To do this, select the checkbox located to the left of the relevant value.	
Day of month	Specify a day of the month. You can specify one value or several values separated by a comma.	

In the advanced mode, you can specify more parameters for the schedule using a cron expression. To do this, select the **Advanced mode** value from the **Mode** drop-down list and specify the needed values in the fields displayed. You can specify one value or several values separated by a comma. You can use the character * (asterisk) to specify the entire range of possible values. Upon that the **Schedule** field will be filled in automatically. In the **Schedule name** field, specify a schedule name for easier identification (you can specify any name).

You can also use the calendar mode to configure the schedule. To do this, select the **Calendar mode** value from the **Mode** drop-down list. In the **Schedule name** field, specify a schedule name for easier identification (you can specify any name). In the table, select cells corresponding to needed hours and days of the week. To deselect a cell, left-click it once again. To deselect all cells and select others, click the **RESET** button and select new cells.

Click the **SAVE** button.

To edit a schedule, in the **All Tasks** section, select the relevant line in the table. In the opened window, change the needed parameters and click the **SAVE** button.

To remove a schedule, in the **All Tasks** section, select the checkbox located to the left of the relevant line in the table and click the **DELETE** button ($\boxed{10}$).

To assign a created schedule to a taskwhich will be applied to a rule or setting of the firewall, for limitation of wireless client maximum bandwidth or will enable/disable Wi-Fi connection or Wi-Fi filter, go to the relevant page of the web-based interface of the device.

Log

On the **System / Log** page, you can set the system log options and configure sending the system log to a remote host and/or a USB storage connected to the router.

Lo	og	(
	Settings	
	Level	
•	Informational messages	•
	USB Storage	
	JetFlash Transcend 8GB usb1_1	UNMOUNT
	(i) Unmount the USB storage device before removing	
	The maximum size of one file (in kilobytes)*	
Q	0	
	(i) 0 - no file size limit	
	Number of saved archive files	
	1	G
		Level Informational messages USB Storage

Figure 236. The System / Log page. The Settings tab.

To enable logging of the system events, go to the **Settings** tab and move the **Enable** switch to the right. Then specify the needed parameters.

User Manual

Parameter	Description	
	Logging	
	Select a type of logging from the drop-down list.	
	• Local: The system log is stored in the router's memory. When this value is selected, the Server and Port fields are not displayed.	
Туре	• Remote : The system log is sent to the remote host specified in the Server field.	
	• Remote and local : The system log is stored in the router's memory and sent to the remote host specified in the Server field.	
Level	Select a type of messages and alerts/notifications to be logged.	
Server	The IP or URL address of the host from the local or global network, to which the system log will be sent.	
Port	A port of the host specified in the Server field. By default, the value 514 is specified.	
	Record to USB	
USB Storage	If a USB storage is connected to the router, its name is displayed in the field.	
	To safely disconnect the USB storage, click the UNMOUNT button.	
Save log to a USB storage	Move the switch to the right so that the device could send the system log to the USB storage connected to it. Upon that the Path , File name , The maximum size of one file , and Number of saved archive files fields are displayed.	
Path	Click the Search icon (\mathbf{Q}) located to the right of the field in order to locate the folder where system log files will be stored.	
File name	A name for system log files.	
The maximum size of one file	The maximum size (in kilobytes) of one system log file.	
Number of saved archive files	The maximum number of files allowed to be recorded on the USB storage. When this number is exceeded, the file containing the oldest data will be overwritten. The field is available for editing if the value specified in the The maximum size of one file field is greater than zero.	

After specifying the needed parameters, click the $\ensuremath{\mathsf{APPLY}}$ button.

To disable logging of the system events, move the **Enable** switch to the left and click the **APPLY** button.

To view the system log, go to the **Log** tab.

〈 Schedule		Log		
	Log		Settings	
Aug 7 17:40:13 [DBG] Aug 7 17:40:13 [TRCE] Aug 7 17:40:14 [INFO] Aug 7 17:40:14 [INFO] Aug 7 17:40:19 [TRCE] Aug 7 17:40:20 [INFO] Aug 7 17:43:49 [INFO] Aug 7 17:43:49 [INFO] Aug 7 17:43:50 [DBG] aug 7 17:43:50 [DBG] Aug 7 17:43:50 [DBG] Aug 7 17:43:50 [INFO] Aug 7 17:44:40 [NOTE] Aug 7 17:44:40 [NOTE]	<pre>unload firewall rule[11185]: Rule check diff args[72]: dnsmasq@26(re load[11185]: Generic stream failuu CONFIG[11185]: Saving config - OK dwatcher[wrkr][11218]: Process act load[11262]: Generic stream failuu CONFIG[11262]: Saving config - OK dwatcher[wrkr][11263]: Process act udhcpc[442]: sending renew to 192. udhcpc[442]: default gateway=192. DynPortMap[11775]: could not open dhcp_opt_print[11769]: Option(1): dhcp_opt_print[11769]: Option(51): dhcp_opt_print[11769]: Option(51): dhcp_opt_print[11769]: option(51): dhcp_opt_print[11769]: option(51): dhcp_opt_print[11769]: option(51): dhcp_opt_print[11769]: option(54): update udhcpc[11769]: can't parse so AUTH[72]: Attempt to proceed a RPC</pre>	<pre>start): arguments are re! tion: ConfigSaved .168.161.1 .228 obtained, lease t _renew; stop_on_fail=0 .168.161.1 lease file: /tmp/mini 255.255.0 192.168.161.1 1.1.1 1.0.0.1 :600 : 192.168.161.1 .; stop_on_fail=0; cheme in url=; C with invalid token: </pre>	ime 600 ;	

Figure 237. The System / Log page. The Log tab.

To view the latest system events, click the **REFRESH** button.

To save the system log to your PC, click the **EXPORT** button. The file will be stored in the download location of your web browser.

Ping

On the **System / Ping** page, you can check availability of a host from the local or global network via the Ping utility.

The Ping utility sends echo requests to a specified host and receives echo replies.

😑 < Log		Ping		
Ping				
You can check availability of a	host from the local or global	network via the pi	ng utility.	
	Number of attempts*			
Host*	3	IPv6	MORE SETTINGS	
				1.
	START	CLEAR C	ANCEL	

Figure 238. The System / Ping page.

To check availability of a host, enter the IP address or name of this host in the **Host** field and specify a number of requests that will be sent in order to check its availability in the **Number of attempts** field. If availability check should be performed with IPv6, move the **IPv6** switch to the right.

To specify additional settings, click the **MORE SETTINGS** button.

Packet size (in	bytes)*
56	
 Specifies th 	e number of data bytes to be sent.
Maiting for son	
3	ponse (in seconds)*
3	

Figure 239. The System / Ping page. The additional settings window.

In the opened window, in the **Packet size** field, specify the volume of data sent in a request. In the **Waiting for response** field, specify the response waiting period in seconds. To restore the default field values, click the **DEFAULT SETTINGS** button.

After specifying the additional parameters, click the **OK** button.

To run the check, click the **START** button. After a while, the results will be displayed on the page.

If you need to interrupt the check, click the **CANCEL** button (the button is available from the moment the check starts).

To remove the check result from the page, click the **CLEAR** button.

Traceroute

On the **System / Traceroute** page, you can trace the route of data transfer to a host via the traceroute utility.

< Ping	Traceroute	e	
Traceroute You can determine the route of data transfer to	a host via the traceroute utility.		
Host* IPv6	MORE SETTINGS		
	START CLEAR	CANCEL	

Figure 240. The **System / Traceroute** page.

To trace the route, enter the name or IP address of a host in the **Host** field. If the route should be traced using IPv6, move the **IPv6** switch to the right.

To specify additional settings, click the **MORE SETTINGS** button.

	×
Maximum TTL value* 30	
(i) The maximum number of hops	
Number of attempts*	
(i) The number of probe packets to a hop	
Wait time (in seconds)* 3	
Waiting for response (in seconds)	
OK DEFAULT SETTINGS	

Figure 241. The System / Traceroute page. The additional settings window.

In the opened window, you can specify the following parameters:

Parameter	Description
Maximum TTL value	Specify the TTL (<i>Time to live</i>) parameter value. The default value is 30 .
Number of attempts	The number of attempts to hit an intermediate host.
Wait time	A period of waiting for an intermediate host response.

To restore the default field values, click the **DEFAULT SETTINGS** button.

After specifying the additional parameters, click the **OK** button.

To run the check, click the **START** button. After a while, the results will be displayed on the page.

If you need to interrupt the check, click the **CANCEL** button (the button is available from the moment the check starts).

To remove the check result from the page, click the **CLEAR** button.

Telnet/SSH

On the **System / Telnet/SSH** page, you can enable or disable access to the device settings via TELNET and/or SSH from your LAN. By default, access is disabled.

< Traceroute	Tel	net/SS	н	
Telnet/	SSH able or disable access to the device settings via TELNET and	SSH from y	your LAN.	
D En	able Telnet		Enable SSH	
Port		Port		
23	6	22	6	
APPLY				

Figure 242. The System / Telnet/SSH page.

To enable access via TELNET and/or SSH, move the **Enable Telnet** switch and/or **Enable SSH** switch to the right. In the **Port** field, enter the number of the router's port through which access will be allowed (by default, the port **23** is specified for Telnet and the port **22** is specified for SSH). Then click the **APPLY** button.

To disable access via TELNET and/or SSH again, move the **Enable Telnet** switch and/or **Enable SSH** switch to the left and click the **APPLY** button.

System Time

On the **System / System Time** page, you can manually set the time and date of the router or configure automatic synchronization of the system time with a time server on the Internet.

	Systen	n Time 🖸	
System time You can set up automatic synchror	ization of the system time	with a time server on the Internet.	
Enable NTP		Time interval between NTP requests after synchronization with NTP server	
UTC offset settings		Auto 👻	
Configure daylight saving time manually		Time interval between NTP requests for unsynchronized NTP client	
Get NTP server address	es using DHCP	Auto	
Run as a server for the	local network	Time zone* Europe/Moscow	
System date:	24.06.2021		
System time:	16:09	DETERMINE TIMEZONE	
Synchronization:	Completed		
NTP Servers			
pool.ntp.org	×		
ADD SERVER			
APPLY			

Figure 243. The System / System Time page.

To set the system time manually, follow the next steps:

- 1. Move the **Enable NTP** switch to the left.
- 2. In the **Time Settings** section, specify needed values. To specify the time set up your PC or portable device, click the **SET LOCAL TIME** button.
- 3. Click the **APPLY** button. The **System date** and **System time** fields will be filled in automatically.

To enable automatic synchronization with a time server, follow the next steps:

- 1. Move the **Enable NTP** switch to the right.
- 2. Specify the needed NTP server or leave the value specified by default in the **NTP Servers** section. If you need to specify several servers, click the **ADD SERVER** button.
- 3. Select your time zone from the **Time zone** drop-down list. To set the time zone in accordance with the settings of your operating system or portable device, click the **DETERMINE TIMEZONE** button.
- 4. Click the **APPLY** button. The **System date** and **System time** fields will be filled in automatically. In case of successful synchronization with the NTP server, the **Completed** value will be displayed in the **Synchronization** field.

If the router failed to get data from the server, the **Failed** value will be displayed in the **Synchronization** field. Upon that the creation date and time of the router's current firmware version is specified.

Additional settings are also available on the page:

Parameter	Description	
UTC offset settingsMove the switch to the right to set the UTC (Coordinated U Time) offset for the router clock manually. In the UTC offset displayed, specify the required offset time (in minutes).		
Configure daylight saving time manually	Move the switch to the right to configure settings for daylight saving time for the router clock manually. In the Daylight Saving Time section displayed, specify the required offset time for daylight saving time (in minutes), and specify the needed values in the Beginning of daylight saving time and End of daylight saving time sections.	
Get NTP server addresses using DHCP	Move the switch to the right if NTP servers addresses are provided by your ISP. Contact your ISP to clarify if this setting needs to be enabled. If the switch is moved to the right, the NTP Servers section is not displayed.	
Run as a server for the local network	Move the switch to the right to allow connected devices to use the II address of the router in the local subnet as a time server.	
Time interval between NTP requests after synchronization with NTP server	From the drop-down list, select a time period (in seconds) after which a request to update the system time will be sent to the NTP server or leave the Auto value.	

Parameter	Description	
Time interval between NTP requests for unsynchronized NTP client	 A time period (in seconds) after which a request to synchronize the system time will be sent to the NTP server. Select the needed value from the drop-down list. Auto: The time period is defined automatically. Manual: The time period is defined in accordance with the value specified in the Interval value field. 	
Interval value	Specify the time period (in seconds). The minimum acceptable va is 3.	

After specifying the needed parameters, click the **APPLY** button.

When the router is powered off or rebooted, the system time is reset to the default value. If you have set automatic synchronization for the system time, the internal clock of the device will be configured after connecting to the Internet. If you have set the system time manually, you need to set the time and date again (see above).

Auto Provision

On the System / Auto Provision page, you can enable the Auto Provision function.

The Auto Provision function allows your ISP to manage the device's settings remotely: DVG-5402G/GF connects to the ISP's server, compares the current configuration file with the configuration file stored on this server, and updates its settings if the files are different.

System Time	Auto Provision	
Auto Provision		
Enable Auto Provision	Status:	No check has been run yet
Use BOOTP option	CHECK STATUS	
Autoconfiguration server address		
File name		
File check period (in seconds) 1800 Protocol type		

Figure 244. The page for configuring the Auto Provision function.

You can specify the following parameters:

Parameter	Description
Enable Auto Provision	Move the switch to the right to enable the Auto Provision function. Move the switch to the left to disable the Auto Provision function.
Use BOOTP option	If the switch is moved to the right, the parameters of your ISP's server (the address, the location of the configuration file, and the protocol) are automatically specified using DHCP options 66 and 67. Upon that a connection of the Dynamic IPv4 type should be configured on the Connections Setup / WAN page. If the switch is moved to the left, the parameters of your ISP's server should be specified manually.

Parameter	Description	
Autoconfiguration server address	The IP or URL address of your ISP's server where the configuration file is stored.	
File name	The location of the configuration file on the ISP's server.	
File check period	A time period (in seconds) between attempts to compare the current configuration file with the configuration file on the ISP's server.	
Protocol type	A protocol for communication with the ISP's server where the configuration file is stored.	

After specifying the needed parameters, click the **APPLY** button.

If you need to check manually if the current configuration file corresponds to the configuration file on the ISP's server, click the **CHECK STATUS** button. The check result will be displayed in the **Status** field. If the files are different, the device's settings will be updated.

SkyDNS

This menu is designed to configure the SkyDNS service.

SkyDNS is a web content filtering service which provides protection against malicious web sites for devices connected to the router's network, and also allows to configure filtering, block access to adult web sites, and use search engines safely. In order to use the service, first register an account on the SkyDNS service web site.

Settings

On the **SkyDNS / Settings** page, you can enable the SkyDNS service and specify settings for its operation.

Auto Provision	Settings		
V Skydns s	kyDNS rvice for web content filtering	and safe Internet access.	
Safe Internet at Home		Web Content Filtering Service for Public Wi-Fi Networks	
A convenient instrument for parenta provision for home users accessing		Reliable protection for public Wi-Fi hotspots in cafes, restaurants, fitness clubs, movie theaters, etc.	
Protection Against Malware		Convenient Management	
The service also protects against ma resources, and botnets.	lware, phishing	Highly flexible filtering parameters; clear and simple interface.	
Basic Settings		Account	
DISABLE		Mail* test@dlink.ru	
Provider SkyDNS	A	Password*	
Provider is available			Ø
GO TO PERSONAL PROFILE PAGE		Tariff	
Default profile*		Домашний	
Основной	-	Successfully authorized	
Sync period (in seconds)* 3600			
APPLY MANUALLY SYNC			

Figure 245. The SkyDNS / Settings page.

To enable the SkyDNS service, click the **ENABLE** button. Then in the **Mail** and **Password** fields, enter the account data (the e-mail address and the password correspondingly) specified upon registration on the SkyDNS service web site. Click the **APPLY** button. The account data (authorization status, the tariff used), the **Default profile** drop-down list, and the **Sync period** field will be displayed on the page. If needed, from the **Default profile** list, select another filtering profile which will be used for all devices of your LAN and click the **APPLY** button again.

The default filtering profile will be applied to all devices newly connected to the router's network.

To change the parameters of your account on the SkyDNS service web site, click the **GO TO PERSONAL PROFILE PAGE** button.

By default, the account parameters are automatically synchronized with the SkyDNS service web site once an hour (3600 seconds). To change the automatic synchronization period, specify another value in the **Sync period** field and click the **APPLY** button. To start synchronization manually, click the **MANUALLY SYNC** button.

To use another account, specify its data in the **Mail** and **Password** fields and click the **APPLY** button.

To disable the SkyDNS service, click the **DISABLE** button.

Devices and Rules

On the **SkyDNS / Devices and Rules** page, you can assign a specific filtering profile to a device connected to the router's network.

😑 🕻 Settings	Devic	es and Rules		
Known Clients				
IP address	MAC address	Name	Profile	
192.168.0.3	00:13:46:62:2f:4c	-	Not selected	
Rules +			_	
MAC address	ded in the table the default prof: Pi		a. Iostname	

Figure 246. The SkyDNS / Devices and Rules page.

In the **Known Clients** section, the devices connected to the local network of the router at the moment and their relevant filtering profile are displayed.

To assign a specific filtering profile for a device, click the **ADD** button (+) in the **Rules** section or left-click the name of the filtering profile in the line of the device for which a profile should be assigned in the **Known Clients** section.

Adding	×
MAC address*	
Profile* Основной	•
Hostname	
SAVE	

Figure 247. The SkyDNS / Devices and Rules page. The window for adding a rule.

In the opened window, specify the following parameters:

Parameter	Description	
MAC address	The MAC address of a device from the router's LAN to which the specified filtering profile will be applied. You can enter the MAC address of a device connected to the router's LAN at the moment. To do this, select the relevant device from the drop-down list (the field will be filled in automatically).	
ProfileSelect the filtering profile which will be used for the device w specified MAC address from the drop-down list.		
Hostname	Enter a name for the rule for easier identification. <i>Optional</i> .	

After specifying the needed parameters, click the **SAVE** button.

To edit a rule, select the relevant line in the table. In the opened window, change the needed parameters and click the **SAVE** button.

To remove a rule, select the checkbox located to the left of the relevant line of the table and click

the **DELETE** button $(\overline{\blacksquare})$.

CHAPTER 5. OPERATION GUIDELINES

Safety Rules and Conditions

Please carefully read this section before installation and connection of the device. Make sure that the power adapter and cables are not damaged. The device should be used only as intended in accordance with the documents.

The device is intended for use in dry, clean, dust-free, and well ventilated areas with normal humidity away from strong heat sources. Do not use the device outdoors or in the areas with high humidity. Do not place foreign objects on the device. Do not obstruct the ventilation openings of the device. The environmental temperature near the device and the temperature inside the device's cover should be within the range from 0 °C to +40 °C.

Only use the power adapter supplied with the device. Do not plug in the adapter, if its case or cable are damaged. Plug the adapter only into working electrical outlets with parameters indicated on the adapter.

Do not open the cover of the device! Unplug the device before dusting and cleaning. Use a damp cloth to clean the device. Do not use liquid/aerosol cleaners or magnetic/static cleaning devices. Prevent moisture getting into the device or the power adapter.

The service life of the device is 2 years.

Wireless Installation Considerations

The DVG-5402G/GF device lets you access your network using a wireless connection from virtually anywhere within the operating range of your wireless network. Keep in mind, however, that the number, thickness and location of walls, ceilings, or other objects that the wireless signals must pass through, may limit the range. Typical ranges vary depending on the types of materials and background RF noise in your home or office. To maximize your wireless range, follow the guidelines below.

- 1. Keep the number of walls and ceilings between the DVG-5402G/GF device and other network devices to a minimum each wall or ceiling can reduce your wireless network range by 3-90 feet (1-30 meters).
- 2. Be aware of the direct line between network devices. Place your devices so that the signal travels straight through a wall or ceiling (instead of at an angle) for better reception.
- 3. Building materials make a difference. A solid metal door or aluminum studs may have a negative effect on your wireless range. Try to position your router, access points, and computers so that the signal passes through drywalls or open doorways. Materials and objects such as glass, steel, metal, walls with insulation, water (fish tanks), mirrors, file cabinets, brick, and concrete will degrade your wireless signal.
- 4. Keep your router away (at least 3-6 feet or 1-2 meters) from electrical devices or appliances that generate RF noise.
- 5. If you are using 2.4 GHz cordless phones or X-10 equipment (wireless devices such as ceiling fans, lights, and home security systems), your wireless connection may degrade dramatically or drop completely. Make sure your 2.4 GHz phone base is as far away from your wireless devices as possible. Note, that the base transmits a signal even if the phone in not in use.

CHAPTER 6. ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

Generation
ss Category
nced Encryption Standard
ss Point
ess Resolution Protocol
y Phase-shift Keying
Service Set Identifier
plementary Code Keying
enge Handshake Authentication Protocol
rential Binary Phase-shift Keying
mic Domain Name System
ibuted Denial of Service
Encryption Standard
mic Host Configuration Protocol
ilitarized Zone
ain Name System
Peer Detection
rential Quadrature Phase-shift Keying
al Subscriber Line
t-sequence Spread Spectrum
ery Traffic Indication Message
net over Generic Routing Encapsulation
nwich Mean Time
ric Routing Encapsulation
al System for Mobile Communications

HTTPS	Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure
ICMP	Internet Control Message Protocol
ID	Identifier
IGD	Internet Gateway Device
IGMP	Internet Group Management Protocol
IKE	Internet Key Exchange
IMEI	International Mobile Equipment Identity
IMSI	International Mobile Subscriber Identity
IP	Internet Protocol
IPTV	Internet Protocol Television
IPsec	Internet Protocol Security
ISP	Internet Service Provider
L2TP	Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol
LAN	Local Area Network
LCP	Link Control Protocol
LED	Light-emitting diode
LTE	Long Term Evolution
MAC	Media Access Control
MBSSID	Multiple Basic Service Set Identifier
MIB	Management Information Base
ΜΙΜΟ	Multiple Input Multiple Output
MPPE	Microsoft Point-to-Point Encryption
MS-CHAP	Microsoft Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol
MTU	Maximum Transmission Unit
NAT	Network Address Translation
NIC	Network Interface Controller
NTP	Network Time Protocol

OFDM	Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplexing
PAP	Password Authentication Protocol
PBC	Push Button Configuration
PFS	Perfect Forward Secrecy
PIN	Personal Identification Number
ΡοΕ	Power over Ethernet
PPP	Point-to-Point Protocol
pppd	Point-to-Point Protocol Daemon
PPPoE	Point-to-point protocol over Ethernet
PPTP	Point-to-point tunneling protocol
PSK	Pre-shared key
PUK	PIN Unlock Key
QAM	Quadrature Amplitude Modulation
QoS	Quality of Service
QPSK	Quadrature Phase-shift Keying
RADIUS	Remote Authentication in Dial-In User Service
RIP	Routing Information Protocol
RIPng	Next Generation Routing Information Protocol
RTS	Request To Send
RTSP	Real Time Streaming Protocol
SA	Security Association
SAE	Simultaneous Authentication of Equals
SIM	Subscriber Identification Module
SIP	Session Initiation Protocol
SMB	Server Message Block
SNMP	Simple Network Management Protocol
SSH	Secure Shell
L	ı J

SSID	Service Set Identifier
STBC	Space-time block coding
ТСР	Transmission Control Protocol
ΤΚΙΡ	Temporal Key Integrity Protocol
UAM	Universal Access Method
UDP	User Datagram Protocol
UPnP	Universal Plug and Play
URL	Uniform Resource Locator
USB	Universal Serial Bus
VLAN	Virtual Local Area Network
VPN	Virtual Private Network
VRID	Virtual Router Identifier
VRRP	Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol
WAN	Wide Area Network
WEP	Wired Equivalent Privacy
Wi-Fi	Wireless Fidelity
WISP	Wireless Internet Service Provider
WLAN	Wireless Local Area Network
WMM	Wi-Fi Multimedia
WPA	Wi-Fi Protected Access
WPS	Wi-Fi Protected Setup